Dear Customer

Please find enclosed Amendment 12, effective 10 October 2011, to the New Zealand Building Code Handbook.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Old Handbook</th>
<th>October 2011 Amendments to Handbook</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title pages</td>
<td>Remove title pages and document history</td>
<td>Replace with new title pages and document history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>Remove pages 5/6, 7/8</td>
<td>Replace with new pages 5/6, 7/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>Remove pages 79-104B</td>
<td>Replace with new pages 79-104B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Remove pages 149-208</td>
<td>Replace with new pages 149-208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handbook: Document History</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Alterations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First published</td>
<td>July 1992</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amendment 11</td>
<td>Published 31 July 2010</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Effective 30 September 2010</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pp. 6–8, 11 Preface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pp. 17–78, Code Clauses – amended and reformatted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pp. 79–104A, References – amended and reprinted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pp. 105–148f, Definitions – amended and reprinted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>196–199, 201, 204–208, Index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amendment 12</td>
<td>10 October 2011</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>p. 6, Preface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pp. 80–100, 102–104A, References</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pp. 149–208, Index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Page numbers relate to the document at the time of Amendment and may not match page numbers in current document.

**Document Status**

The most recent version of this document, as detailed in the Document History, is approved by the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing. It is effective from 10 October 2011 and supersedes all previous versions of this document.

People using this document should check for amendments on a regular basis. The Department of Building and Housing may amend any part of any document at any time. Up-to-date versions of documents are available from www.dbh.govt.nz


• Buildings need to be durable.
• Special traditional and cultural aspects of the intended use of a building need to be recognised.
• The whole-of-life costs of a building need to be considered.
• Standards are important in achieving compliance with the Building Code for building design and construction.
• Innovation in methods of building design and construction is important.
• People who undertake a rescue operation or firefighting in a building need to be able to expect a reasonable level of protection from injury or illness while doing so.
• The extent and effects of the spread of fire need to be limited to protect other household units and other property.
• Other property needs to be protected from physical damage resulting from the construction, use and demolition of a building.
• People with disabilities need to be able to enter and carry out normal activities and processes in a building.
• Buildings of significant cultural, historical or heritage value need to be preserved.
• Energy use in buildings needs to be efficient.
• The use of renewable sources of energy needs to be encouraged.
• Material use in buildings needs to be efficient and sustainable.
• Water use in buildings needs to be efficient and promote water conservation.
• Waste generated during the construction process needs to be reduced.

2.1.3 Application

The Building Act applies to:

• building construction, alteration, demolition or removal
• maintenance of a building’s specified systems, such as lifts and fire protection installations.

The Building Act does not cover:

• planning and resource management
• occupational safety and health.

2.1.4 Structure

The Building Act has five parts.

Part 1: Contains the purpose and principles of the Building Act, together with an overview, commencement dates for various Provisions and definitions. These sections provide an important reference when reading and interpreting the Building Act.

Part 2 (and Schedules 1 and 2): Outlines matters relating to the Building Code and building control (such as building consents), including requirements of building work, requirements for the use of buildings, Provisions for certain categories of buildings and Provisions for the safety of dams.

Part 3: Sets out the functions, duties and powers of the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing (the Department), territorial authorities, regional authorities and building consent authorities. It also deals with the accreditation and registration of building consent authorities, accreditation of dam owners, and product certification.

Part 4 (and Schedule 3): Covers matters relating to the licensing and disciplining of building practitioners.

Part 5 (and Schedule 4): Describes miscellaneous matters, including offences and criminal proceedings, implied terms of contracts, regulation-making powers, amendments to other enactments and the repeal of the former Act, and the transitional Provisions from the former Act to the Building Act.
2.2 Building Regulations

Building Regulations are made under and in accordance with the Building Act.

A number of regulations have been made under the Building Act. Currently (as at May 2007) there are seven sets of regulations.

1. Building Regulations 1992, made under the former Act and which include the Building Code. These regulations have been amended by the Building (Forms) Regulations 2004 so that only certain parts remain in force. Parts still in force are: Schedule 1 (Building Code), Regulation 3, Forms 16 & 17 (and Regulation 4 and Schedule 2 where they relate to these forms).

2. Building (Forms) Regulations 2004, as amended by the Building (Forms) Amendment Regulations 2005, which prescribes forms to be used under the Building Act.

   - Specified systems – the building systems that must be listed on compliance schedules and are subject to specific inspection and maintenance procedures. Schedule 1 provides the list of specified systems.
   - Change the use – to determine when a change in a building’s use will require upgrading to meet certain requirements of the Building Act. Schedule 2 determines the use of all or parts of buildings.
   - Moderate earthquake – to define a moderate earthquake in relation to a building.

4. Building (Fee for Determinations) Regulations 2005

5. Building Levy Order 2005


7. Building (Consent Authority Accreditation Fees) Regulations 2007


9. Building (Design Work Declared to be Building Work) Order 2007

10. Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2007


13. Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2008


15. Building Practitioners (Complaints and Disciplinary Procedures) Regulations 2008


17. Building (Building Consent Authority Transition) Order 2008

18. Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2009


20. Building (Designation of Building Work Licensing Classes) Order 2010

21. Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2010

22. Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2010

23. Canterbury Earthquake (Building Act) order 2010

24. Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2011

Note: these regulations can be found at www.legislation.govt.nz

2.3 The New Zealand Building Code

2.3.1 Content
The Building Code sets out performance criteria that building work must meet. It covers aspects such as structural stability, fire safety, access, moisture control, durability, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The Building Code does not prescribe how work should be done, but states how completed building work and its parts must perform.

An advantage of a performance-based Building Code is flexibility. It contains no prescriptive requirements stipulating that certain products or designs must be used. This flexibility allows developments and innovation in building design, technology and systems.

2.3.2 Structure
The Building Code consists of two preliminary clauses and 35 technical clauses. Each technical clause has three levels that describe the requirements for the clause and is listed below.

1. **Objective** Social objectives the building must achieve.
2. **Functional requirement** Functions the building must perform to meet the Objective.
3. **Performance** The performance criteria the building must achieve. By meeting the performance criteria, the Objective and Functional requirement can be achieved.
3.0 COMPLIANCE PATHS

Compliance with the Building Code can be demonstrated using various pathways. Understanding the New Zealand building control framework will help a building consent applicant decide which path is most suitable when designing and constructing building work.

The diagram below illustrates the hierarchy of New Zealand building controls, including the various compliance paths.

The top three tiers of the pyramid (the Building Act and Building Regulations) show mandatory building legislation that must be followed, as explained in the previous section.

The rest of the diagram shows various paths that may be used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Code. Compliance with the Building Code must be demonstrated using one or more of the paths. The applicant can choose which path(s) to follow.

With the exception of alternative solutions, the paths illustrated on the previous page must be accepted by the building consent authority as meeting the performance requirements of the Building Code. These pathways are discussed below.

3.1 Compliance Documents

Compliance Documents provide details for construction that, if followed, result in compliance with the Building Code. They are published by the Department. (Note: Compliance Documents were previously known as Approved Documents, and were published by the former Building Industry Authority.)

A design that complies with Compliance Documents must be accepted by a building consent authority as complying with the Building Code.

There is one Compliance Document for each of the 35 technical clauses in the Building Code. Each Compliance Document contains at least a Verification Method or an Acceptable Solution, and usually has both. However, some Compliance Documents have more than one Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example, the Compliance Document for Clause B1 of the Building Code has two Verification Methods and three Acceptable Solutions.

Verification Methods and Acceptable Solutions are usually referred to by their Building Code clauses and unique identification numbers. Some examples are listed below:

- The Acceptable Solutions for Clause E2 External Moisture are known as E2/AS1, E2/AS2 and E2/AS3.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G1 Personal Hygiene is known as G1/AS1.
- The Verification Methods for Clause B1 Structure are known as B1/VM1 and B1/VM4.

3.1.1 Verification Methods

Verification Methods are tests or calculation methods that prescribe one way to comply with the Building Code. Verification Methods can include:

- calculation methods: using recognised analytical methods and mathematical models
- laboratory tests: using tests (sometimes to destruction) on prototype components and systems
- tests-in-situ: which may involve examination of plans and verification by test, where compliance with specified numbers, dimensions or locations is required (non-destructive tests, such as pipe pressure tests, are also included).

3.1.2 Acceptable Solutions

These are simple step-by-step instructions that show one way to comply with the Building Code.

3.2 Product certification

The Building Act contains provisions for a voluntary product certification scheme that will enable product manufacturers to have their products certified as meeting nominated Performance requirements of the Building Code.
Publications Referenced in Handbook and Compliance Documents

For the purposes of New Zealand Building Code compliance, acceptable reference documents include only the quoted edition and specific amendments as listed below.

Dates in brackets indicate that the Standard was reviewed and reissued without change that year.

Compliance Documents in which the particular references are quoted are identified by the relevant Building Code Clause and the number of the Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example: B1/VM1/AS3 indicates that the reference occurs in Verification Method 1, and Acceptable Solution 3 of the Compliance Document for Clause B1 Structure.

Where references are quoted in the Compliance Schedule Handbook, these are identified by the letters HB and the relevant section. For example: HB/SS 3 indicates that the reference occurs in the content guide for SS 3 in the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

Places where the reference documents are quoted, are more specifically identified by paragraph or table, in the reference list contained in each Compliance Document.

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards New Zealand</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standards Australia</th>
<th>91</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British Standards Institution</th>
<th>95</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)</th>
<th>98</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Australian Publications (other than Standards)</th>
<th>100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Australia/New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)</th>
<th>100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British Publications (other than Standards)</th>
<th>101</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>International Publications</th>
<th>101</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>US Publications</th>
<th>103</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Standards New Zealand

NZS/BS 21: 1985 Specification for pipe threads for tubes and fittings where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads (metric dimensions)

Amend: 1

Where quoted

G10/AS1, G14/VM1
NZS/BS 476:- Fire tests on building materials and structures
Part 20: 1987 Method for determination of the fire resistance of elements of construction (general principles)
Amend: 6487
Part 21: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction
Part 22: 1987 Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction

NZS/BS 970:- Specification for wrought steels for mechanical and allied engineering purposes
Part 1: 1991 General inspection and testing procedures and specific requirements for carbon, carbon manganese, alloy and stainless steels
Amend: 1

NZS 1170: Structural Design Actions
Part 5: 2004 Earthquake design actions – New Zealand standard

AS/NZS 1170: Structural Design Actions
Part 0: 2002 General principles
Amends: 1, 2 and 4
Part 1: 2002 Permanent, imposed and other actions
Amend: 1
Part 2: 2002 Wind Actions
Amend: 1
Part 3: 2003 Snow and ice actions
Amend: 1

AS/NZS 1221: 1997 Fire hose reels
Amend: 1

AS/NZS 1254: 2002 Unplasticised PVC pipes and fittings for storm and surface water applications

AS/NZS 1260: 2002 PVC pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications

AS/NZS 1260: 2009 PVC-U Pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent application

NZS/BS 1387: 1985 Specification for screwed and socketed steel tubes (1990) and tubulars and for plain end steel tubes suitable for welding or screwing to BS 21 pipe threads
Amend: 1

AS 1397: 2001 Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dipped zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated

AS/NZS 1477: 2006 PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications
Amend: 1

AS/NZS 1530:- Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures
Part 3: 1999 Simultaneous determination of ignitability, flame propagation, heat release and smoke release
AS/NZS 1546: 2008 On-site domestic wastewater treatment units
   Part 1: Septic tanks
AS/NZS 1547: 2000 On-site domestic wastewater management

AS/NZS 1604: Specification for preservative treatment
   Part 3: 2002 Plywood
AS/NZS 1646: 2007 Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes

NZS/AS 1657: 1992 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders – Design, construction and installation (known as the SAA Code for fixed platforms, walkways, stairways, and ladders)

AS/NZS 1664:- Aluminium structures
   Part 1: 1997 Limit state design
   Amend: 1

AS/NZS 1668:- The use of ventilation and air conditioning in buildings
   Part 1: 1998 Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings

AS/NZS 1680: Interior and workplace lighting
   Part 1: 2006 General principles and recommendations

AS/NZS 1730: 1996 Washbasins

AS/NZS 1734: 1997 Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Flat sheet, coiled sheet and plate

AS/NZS 1748: 1997 Timber – Stress graded – Product requirements for mechanically stress-graded timber

AS/NZS 1859 Reconstituted wood-based panels
   Part 1: 2002 Particleboard

AS/NZS 1905:- Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls
   Part 1: 1997 Fire-resistant doorsets

AS/NZS 2023: 1995 Baths for ablutionary purposes

AS/NZS 2032: 2006 Installation of PVC pipe systems
   Amend: 1
NZS/AS 2033: 2008 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems
  Amend: 1, 2

AS/NZS 2243:1 2005 Safety in laboratories – Planning and operational aspects
AS/NZS 2243:8 2006 Safety in laboratories – Fume cupboards
AS/NZS 2269: 2004 Plywood – Structural
AS/NZS 2269: 2008 Plywood – Structural

AS/NZS 2280: 2004 Ductile iron pressure pipes and fittings
  Amend: 1

AS/NZS 2293:- Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings
  Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance

NZS 2295: 2006 Pliable, permeable building underlays

  Part 1: 1998 Structural Design
  Part 2: 2002 Installation

AS/NZS 2588: 1998 Gypsum plasterboard

AS/NZS 2642:- Polybutylene pipe systems
  Part 1: 2007 Polybutylene (PB) pipe extrusion compounds
  Part 2: 2008 Polybutylene (PB) pipe for hot and cold water applications
  Part 3: 2008 Mechanical jointing fittings for use with polybutylene (PB) pipes for hot and cold water applications
  Amend: 1

AS/NZS 2699: Built-in components for masonry construction.
  Part 1: 2000 Wall ties
  Part 2: 2000 Connectors and accessories
  Part 3: 2002 Lintels and shelf angles (durability requirements)

AS/NZS 2712: 2002 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and (until 1 July 2009) construction
AS/NZS 2712: 2007 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and construction

Where quoted
  B1/AS1, E1/AS1,
  G12/AS1,
  G13/AS1/AS2,
  G14/AS1

HB/SS 11

HB/SS 11

SH/AS1
  E2/AS1

E1/AS1, G13/AS2

HB/SS 4

E2/AS1, SH/AS1

B1/AS1, E1/AS1
B1/AS1, E1/AS1,
G13/AS2

SH/AS1

G12/AS1
G12/AS1, G14/VM1

G12/AS1, G14/VM1

SH/AS1

G12/AS2

G12/AS2, SH/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2728: 2007 Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications – Performance requirements</td>
<td>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2845: Water supply</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2904: 1995 Damp-proof courses and flashings</td>
<td>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2918: 2001 Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – installation</td>
<td>G9/VM1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3000: 2007 Electrical installations Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3101: Concrete structures standard Part 1: 2006 The design of concrete structures Amend: 1, 2</td>
<td>B2/AS1, B1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3106: 2009 Design of concrete structures for the storage of liquids</td>
<td>B1/VM1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3112: Methods of test for concrete Part 2: 1986 Tests relating to the determination of strength of concrete Amend: 1, 2</td>
<td>B1/AS3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3114: 1987 Specification for concrete surface finishes Amend: 1</td>
<td>D1/AS1, G15/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3116: 2002 Concrete segmental and flagstone paving Amend: 1</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3350.2.35: 1999 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters Amends: 1, 2</td>
<td>G12/AS1, SH/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZS 3404: Steel structures standard Part 1: 1997 Steel structures standard Amend: 1, 2</td>
<td>B1/VM1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AS/NZS 3500:- National plumbing and drainage code
   Part 1: 2003 Water services
       Amend: 1
   Part 2: 2003 Sanitary plumbing and drainage
       Amend: 1
   Part 4: 2003 Heated water services
       Amend: 1
   Part 5: 2003 Domestic installation
NZS 3501: 1976 Specification for copper tubes for water, gas, and sanitation
       Amend: 1, 2 and 3
NZS 3502: 1976 Specification for copper and copper alloy tubes for general engineering purposes
AS/NZS 3518: 2004 Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) compounds pipes and fittings for pressure applications
       Amend: 1
NZS/BS 3601: 1987 Specification for carbon steel pipes and tubes (1993) with specified room temperature properties for pressure purposes
       Amend: 1, 2
NZS 3602:-
NZS 3603: 1993 Timber structures standard
       Amend: 1, 2 (Applies to building work consented prior to 1 April 2007)
       Amend: 1, 2, 4 (Applies to building work consented on or after 1 April 2007)
NZS 3604: 1990 Timber framed buildings
NZS 3604: 1999 Timber framed buildings
       Amend: 1, 2
NZS 3604: 2011 Timber framed buildings
NZS 3605: 2001 Timber piles and poles for use in building
NZS 3617: 1979 Specification for profiles of weatherboards, fascia boards, and flooring
NZS 3622: 2004 Verification of timber properties
       Amend: 1

Where quoted
   G12/VM1/AS1
   G13/AS1/VM2/AS2/AS3
   G12/VM1/AS1/AS2
   SH/AS1
   G10/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2, G12/AS1
   G10/AS1
   G13/AS2, G14/VM1
   G10/AS1
   B2/AS1, E2/AS1 SH/AS1
   B1/VM1/VM4
   SH/AS1
   G12/AS2
   B2/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS2, G13/AS2, SH/AS1
   G12/AS2
   B1/VM4, SH/AS1
   E2/AS1, SH/AS1
   B1/VM1, SH/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amendment</th>
<th>NZS 3631: 1988</th>
<th>New Zealand timber grading rules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>NZS 3640: 2003</td>
<td>Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct 2011</td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>NZS 3640: 2003</td>
<td>Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sep 2010</td>
<td>Amend: 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>NZS 3640: 2003</td>
<td>Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct 2011</td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>AS/NZS 3661:-</td>
<td>Slip resistance of pedestrian surfaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sep 2010</td>
<td>Part 1: 1993</td>
<td>Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 2: 1994</td>
<td>Guide to the reduction of slip hazards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>AS/NZS 3666:-</td>
<td>Air-handling and water systems of buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sep 2010</td>
<td>Part 1: 2002</td>
<td>Design, installation and commissioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 2: 2002</td>
<td>Operation and maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 3: 2000</td>
<td>Performance-based maintenance of cooling water systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>NZS/AS 3725: 2007</td>
<td>Design for installation of buried concrete pipes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>AS/NZS 3869: 1999</td>
<td>Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – Design and construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS/NZS 3896: 1998</td>
<td>Waters – Examination for legionellae including Legionella pneumophila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>AS/NZS 4020: 2005</td>
<td>Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct 2011</td>
<td>AS/NZS 4058: 2007</td>
<td>Pre cast concrete pipes(pressure and non-pressure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>NZS 4121: 2001</td>
<td>Design for access and mobility – Buildings and associated facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS/NZS 4129: 2008</td>
<td>Fillings for polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amends 11</td>
<td>NSZ 4130: 2003</td>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and 12</td>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12</td>
<td>NSZ 4130: 2009</td>
<td>Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct 2011</td>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11</td>
<td>NSZ 4200: 1994</td>
<td>Pliable building membranes and underlays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sep 2010</td>
<td>Part 1:</td>
<td>Materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| NZS 4203: 1992 | Code of practice for general structural design and design loadings for buildings
Corrigendum: 1 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NZS 4206: 1992</td>
<td>Concrete interlocking roofing tiles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| NZS 4210: 2001 | Code of practice for masonry construction: materials and workmanship
Amend: 1 |
| NZS 4211: 1985 | Specification for performance of windows
Amend: 1, 2, 3 |
| NZS 4211: 2008 | Specification for performance of windows |
| NZS 4214: 2006 | Methods of determining the total thermal resistance of parts of buildings |
| NZS 4218: 2004 | Energy efficiency – housing and small building envelope |
| NZS 4219: 1983 | Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings
Amend: 1, 2 |
| NZS 4219: 2009 | Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings |
Glass selection and glazing |
| NZS 4223:- Part 2: 1985 | The selection and installation of manufactured sealed insulating glass units
Amend: 1, 2 |
| NZS 4229: 1999 | Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design
Amend: 1 |

Where quoted

- **G12/AS2**
- **E2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS3, SH/AS1**
- **SH/AS1**
- **B1/VM1, E2/VM1/AS1**
- **E3/AS1, G5/AS1, H1/VM1/AS1**
- **E2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **E2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **H1/VM1/AS1**
- **G10/AS1, G14/VM1**
- **B1/VM1**
- **B1/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1, F2/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/AS1/AS3, E1/AS1, G13/AS2**
Publications Referenced

| NZS 4230: 2004 | Design of reinforced concrete masonry structures |
| NZS 4231: 1985 | Specification for self-luminous exit signs |
| NZS 4232: Part 2: 1988 | Performance criteria for fire resisting enclosures |
| NZS HB 4236: 2002 | Masonary veneer wall cladding |
| NZS 4239: 1993 | Automatic sliding door assemblies |
| NZS 4243: | Energy efficiency – large buildings |
| NZS 4246: 2006 | Energy efficiency – Installing insulation in residential buildings |
| NZS 4251: Part 1: 2007 | Solid plastering |
| NZS 4251: Part 2: 2007 | Cement plaster for walls, ceilings and soffits |
| AS/NZS 4256: Part 2: 1994 | Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) building sheets |
| AS/NZS 4284: 2008 | Testing of building facades |
| NZS 4297: 1998 | Engineering design for earth buildings |
| NZS 4298: 1998 | Materials and workmanship for earth buildings |
| NZS 4299: 1998 | Earth buildings not requiring specific design |
| NZS 4303: 1990 | Ventilation for acceptable indoor air quality |
| NZS 4304: 2002 | Health care waste management |
| NZS 4305: 1996 | Energy efficiency – domestic type hot water systems |
| AS/NZS 4311: 1995 | Metallic flanges |
| Part 1: | Steel flanges |
| Part 2: | Cast iron flanges |
| Part 3: | Copper alloy and composite flanges |
| NZS 4332: 1997 | Non-domestic passenger and goods lifts |
| AS/NZS 4401: 2006 | High density polyethylene (PE-HD) pipes and fittings for soil and waste discharge (low and high temperature) systems inside buildings |

Where quoted

| B1/VM1 |
| F8/AS1 |
| HB/SS 15 |
| C/AS1 |
| E2/AS1 |
| HB/SS 3 |
| H1/VM1/AS1 |
| H1/VM1/AS1 |
| SH/AS1 |
| B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS1 |
| E2/AS1, SH/AS1 |
| E2/VM1 |
| B1/VM1, B2/AS1 |
| E2/AS2 |
| B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS2 |
| G4/AS1 |
| G15/AS1 |
| H1/AS1 |
| G10/AS1, G14/VM1 |
| G10/AS1, G14/VM1 |
| G14/VM1 |
| D2/AS1, F6/AS1, HB/SS 8 |
| G13/AS1, G14/VM1 |
### NZS 4402:- Methods of testing soils for civil engineering purposes
- **Part 2:-** Soil classification tests
- **Test 2.2:** 1986 Determination of the liquid limit
- **Test 2.6:** 1986 Determination of the linear shrinkage
- **Part 4:-** Soil compaction tests
- **Test 4.2.3:** 1988 Related densities

### NZS 4431: 1989 Code of practice for earth fill for residential development
- **Amend:** 1

### NZS 4442: 1988 Welded steel pipes and fittings for water, sewage and medium pressure gas

### AS/NZS 4455: 1997 Masonry units and segmental pavers

### AS/NZS 4456: 2003 Masonry unit and segmental pavers – Methods of test
- **Amend:** 1, 2

### NZS 4503: 2005 Hand operated fire fighting equipment
- **Amend:** 1

### NZS 4510: 2008 Fire hydrant systems for buildings
- **Amend:** 1

### NZS 4512: 2010 Fire detection and alarm systems in buildings

### NZS 4515: 2009 Fire sprinkler systems for life safety in sleeping occupancies (up to 2000 m²)

### NZS 4520: 2010 Fire resistant doorsets

### AS/NZS 4534: 2006 Zinc and zinc/aluminium-alloy coatings on steel wire

### NZS 4541: 2007 Automatic fire sprinkler systems
- **Amend:** 1

### AS/NZS 4586: 2004 Slip resistance classification of new pedestrian surface materials

### AS/NZS 4600: 2005 Cold-formed steel structures

### NZS 4602: 1988 Low pressure copper thermal storage electric water heaters
- **Amend:** 1

### NZS 4603: 1985 Installation of low pressure thermal storage electric water heaters with copper cylinders (open vented systems)
- **Amend:** 1

### Where quoted
- **B1/VM1**
- **B1/Defs, SH/AS1**
- **B1/Defs**
- **B1/VM4**
- **B1/VM1, E2/AS2, SH/AS1**
- **E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1**
- **SH/AS1**
- **SH/AS1**
- **C/AS1**
- **C/AS1, HB/SS 6**
- **C/AS1, HB/SS 2, HB/SS 15, F7/AS1**
- **C/AS1, HB/SS 1, F7/AS1**
- **C/AS1, E2/AS1**
- **C/AS1, F7/AS1, HB/SS 1, SH/AS1**
- **B1/VM1**
- **G12/AS1**
- **G12/AS1, SH/AS1**
NZE 4606:- Storage water heaters
Part 1: 1989 General requirements
Amend: 1, 2, 3

Part 2: 1989 Specific requirements for water heaters with single shells
Amend: A

Part 3: 1992 Specific requirements for water heaters with composite shells
Amend: A

NZE 4607: 1989 Installation of thermal storage electric water heaters: valve vented systems

NZE 4608: 1992 Control valves for hot water systems

NZE 4613: 1986 Domestic solar water heaters

NZE 4614: 1986 Installation of domestic solar water heating systems

NZE 4617: 1989 Tempering (3-port mixing) valves

AS/NZE 4671: 2001 Steel reinforcing materials
Amend: 1

AS/NZE 4680: 2006 Hot-dip galvanised (zinc) coating on fabricated ferrous articles

AS/NZE 4692: Electric water heaters
Part 2: 2005 Minimum Energy Performance Standards (MEPS) requirements and energy labelling

AS/NZE 4740: 2000 Natural ventilators – classification and performance

AS/NZE 4765: 2007 Modified polyvinyl chloride (PVC-M) pipes for pressure applications

AS/NZE 4858: 2004 Wet area membranes

AS/NZE 4859:- Materials for the thermal insulation of buildings
Part 1: 2002 General criteria and technical provisions

AS/NZE 4936: 2002 Air admittance valves for use in sanitary plumbing and drainage systems.

AS/NZE 5000.1 2005 Electric cables – Polymeric insulated – For working voltages up to and including 0.6/1 (1.2) kV
Amend: 1

AS/NZE 5000.2 2006 Electric cables – Polymeric insulated Part 2: For working voltages up to and including 450/750 v.

AS/NZE 5065: 2005 Polyethylene and polypropylene pipe and fittings for drainage and sewerage applications
Amend: 1

Where quoted
G12/AS1, SH/AS1
SH/AS1
G12/AS1, SH/AS1
G12/AS1
G12/AS1
G12/AS1/AS2
G12/AS2
G12/AS1
SH/AS1
B1/AS1/AS3
B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1
G12/AS2
G4/AS1
G14/VM1
E2/AS1
H1/AS1
G13/AS1, SH/AS1
G12/AS1
G12/AS1
E1/AS1, G13/AS2
NZS/BS 5252: 1976 Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes
   Amend: 1

NZS 5261: 2003 Gas installation
   Amend: 1, 2

NZS 5262: 2003 Gas appliance safety
   Amend: 1

NZS 5807:- Code of practice for industrial identification by colour, wording or other coding
   Part 2: 1980 Identification of contents of piping, conduit and ducts
   Amend: 1, 2

NZS 6214: 1988 Thermostats and thermal cutouts for domestic thermal storage electric water heaters (alternating current only)

NZS 6703: 1984 Code of practice for interior lighting design

NZS 6742: 1971 Code of practice for emergency lighting in buildings

NZS 7601: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 3) for cold water services

NZS 7602: 1977 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 5) for cold water services
   Amend: 1

NZS 7610: 1991 Blue polyethylene pipes up to nominal size 63 for below ground use for potable water
   Amend: 1, 2, A

NZS 7646: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipes and fittings for gas reticulation

SNZ HB 8630: 2009 Tracks and outdoor visitor structures

AS/NZS 60335 Household and similar electrical
   Part 2.30: 2009 Safety appliance – Particular requirements for room heaters

Where quoted
   F8/AS1
   C/AS1, G4/AS1, G10/VM1/AS1, G11/AS1, SH/AS1
   SH/AS1
   G10/AS1
   G12/AS1
   G12/AS1
   G7/AS1/VM1
   G8/VM1
   F8/AS1, HB/SS 4
   G12/AS1, G14/VM1
   G12/AS1
   G12/AS1
   G10/AS1
   B1/VM1
   SH/AS1
Standards Australia

AS D26: 1972 Tube fittings with Dryseal American standard taper pipe and unified threads for automotive and industrial use

AS 1111: ISO metric hexagon bolts and screws – Product grades A and B
  Part 1: 2000 Bolts
  Part 2: 2000 Screws

AS 1167:- Welding and brazing – Filler metals
  Part 1: 2005 Filler metal for brazing and braze welding

AS 1214: 1983 Hot-dip galvanised coatings on threaded fasteners (ISO metric coarse thread series)

AS 1229: 2002 Laundry troughs

AS 1273: 1991 Unplasticized PVC (uPVC) downpipe and fittings for rainwater

AS 1308: 1987 Electric water heaters – Thermostats and thermal cut-outs Amend: 1

AS 1357:- Water valves for use with unvented water heaters
  Part 1: 2009 Protection valves Amend: 1, 2
  Part 2: 2005 Control valves Amend: 1, 2

AS 1366:- Rigid cellular plastics sheets for thermal insulation
  Part 1: 1992 Rigid cellular polyurethane (RC/PUR) Amend: 1
  Part 2: 1992 Rigid cellular polyisocyanurate (RC/PIR)

AS 1397: 2001 Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dip zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated

AS 1432: 2004 Copper tubes for plumbing, gasfitting and drainage applications

Where quoted

G10/AS1

SH/AS1

G10/AS1

SH/AS1

G2/AS1

E1/AS1

G12/AS1

G12/AS1

C/AS1

C/AS1

C/AS1, E2/AS1

C/AS1, E2/AS1

B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1

G10/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AS 1530:-</th>
<th>Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 1566: 1997</td>
<td>Cooper and copper alloys – Rolled flat products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1579: 2001</td>
<td>Arc welded steel pipes and fittings for water and waste water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 1589: 2001 Copper and copper alloy waste fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 1646: 2007 Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 1668:- The use of mechanical ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12 Oct 2011</td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1670:-</td>
<td>Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems – System design, installation and commissioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>Part 6: 1997 Smoke alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1691: 1985</td>
<td>Domestic oil-fired appliances – installation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 1741: 1991 Vitrified clay pipes and fittings with flexible joints – Sewerage quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 1804: 1976 Soft lead sheet and strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 1851: 2005 Maintenance of fire protection equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 2033: 2008 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>AS 2049: 2002 Roof tiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12 Oct 2011</td>
<td>AS 2050: 2002 Installation of roof tiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 12 Oct 2011</td>
<td>AS 2159: 1995 Rules for the design and installation of piling (known as the SAA Piling Code)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend: 1</td>
<td>Amend 12 Oct 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2220:-</td>
<td>Emergency warning and intercommunication systems in buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>Part 1: 1989 Equipment design and manufacture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
<td>Part 2: 1989 System design, installation and commissioning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Where quoted

- C/AS1
- C/AS1
- C/AS1
- E2/AS1
- E1/AS1, G13/AS2
- G13/AS1
- E1/AS1
- G4/AS1
- G4/AS1
- F7/AS1
- C/AS1
- E1/AS1, G14/VM1
- E2/AS1, SH/AS1
- HB/SS 1, SS 2, SS 5, SS 9, SS 13, SS 15
- G1/AS1
- G14/VM1, E1/AS1
- E2/AS1, SH/AS1
- E2/VM1
- B1/VM1
- C/AS1
- C/AS1
Publications Referenced

AS 2293: Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings
   Part 1: 2005 System design, installation and operation
   Amend: 1
   Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance
   Amend: 1,2
   Part 3: 2005 Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs
   Amend: 1

AS 2845:- Water supply – Mechanical backflow prevention devices
   Part 3: 1993 Field testing and maintenance
   Amend: 1

AS 2870: 1996 Residential slabs and footings – Construction

AS 2887: 1993 Plastic waste fittings

AS 2890:- Parking facilities
   Part 1: 2004 Off-street parking
   Amend: 1
   Part 2: 2002 Off-street commercial facilities
   Amend: 1

AS 3566 Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries
   Part 2: 2002 Corrosion resistance


AS 3588: 1996 Shower bases and shower modules

AS 3688: 2005 Water supply – Copper and copper alloy compression and capillary fittings and threaded end connectors
   Amend: 1,2

AS 3690: 2009 Installation of ABS pipe systems

AS 3706:- Geotextiles – Methods of test
   Part 1: 2003 General requirements, sampling, conditioning, basic physical properties and statistical analysis

AS 3730 Guide to the properties of paints for buildings
   Part 7: 1992 Latex – Exterior – Flat
   Part 8: 1992 Latex – Exterior – Low gloss

Where quoted

F6/AS1
G12/AS1, HB/SS 7
SH/AS1
G13/AS1
D1/AS1
E2/AS1, SH/AS1
G13/AS2
G1/AS1
G10/AS1
G14/VM1
E1/VM1
SH/AS1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 3730</td>
<td>Guide to the properties of paints for buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 7: 2006</td>
<td>Latex – Exterior – Flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 8: 2006</td>
<td>Latex – Exterior – Low gloss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3786: 1993</td>
<td>Smoke alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4046</td>
<td>Methods of testing roof tiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 9: 2002</td>
<td>Determination of dynamic weather resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4072:-</td>
<td>Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant separating elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2005</td>
<td>Service penetrations and control joints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4139: 2003</td>
<td>Fibre reinforced concrete pipes and fittings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4178: 1994</td>
<td>Electromagnetic door holders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4276:-</td>
<td>Water plate microbiology – Pour plate method using plate count agar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3.1: 2007</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4290: 2000</td>
<td>Design and installation of revolving doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amend: 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 5007: 2007</td>
<td>Powered doors for pedestrian access and egress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 60188.4: 2007</td>
<td>Hearing aids – magnetic field strength in audio-frequency induction loops for hearing aid purposes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where quoted

- E2/AS1
- F7/AS1
- G13/AS2
- HB/SS 3
- HB/SS 9
- HB/SS 12
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British Standards Institution</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BS 10: 2009</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 143, BS 1256: 2000</td>
<td>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSDD 175: 1988</td>
<td>F1/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 437: 2008</td>
<td>G13/AS2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 585:- Part 1: 1989</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 988: 1997</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1044:1999</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1172: 1997</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1490: 2000</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1491: 2000</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1567: 1999</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1595: 1997</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS 10: 2009 Specification for flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings

Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS 143, and BS 1256: 2000 Threaded pipe fittings in malleable cast iron and cast copper alloy

Amend 12 Oct 2011


Amend 11 Sep 2010

BS 437: 2008 Specification for cast iron spigot and socket drain pipes and fittings

Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS 585:- Part 1: 1989 Specification for stairs with closed risers for domestic use, including straight and winder flights and quarter or half landings

Amend 11 Sep 2010

BS EN 988: 1997 Zinc and zinc alloys. Specification for rolled flat products for building

Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS EN 1044:1999 Brazing. Filler metals

Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS EN 1172: 1997 Copper and copper alloys – sheet and strip for building

Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS EN 1490: 2000 Building valves. Combined temperature and pressure relief valves. Tests and requirements

Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS EN 1491: 2000 Building valves. Expansion valves. Tests and requirements

Amend 12 Oct 2011


Amend 12 Oct 2011

BS EN 1595: 1997 Pressure equipment made from borosilicate glass 3.3 – general rules for design, manufacture and testing
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publication</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Where quoted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 1759</td>
<td>Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, class-designated. Steel flanges, NPS 1/2 to 24.</td>
<td>E1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 2971: 1991</td>
<td>Specification for Class II arc welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 3402: 1969</td>
<td>Specification for quality of vitreous china sanitary appliances</td>
<td>G1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 4790: 1996</td>
<td>Method for determination of the effects of a small source of ignition on textile floor coverings (hot metal nut method)</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5287: 1996</td>
<td>Specification for assessment and labelling of textile floor coverings tested to BS 4790</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5378:-</td>
<td>Safety signs and colours</td>
<td>F8/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1980</td>
<td>Specification for colour and design</td>
<td>F8/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5395:-</td>
<td>Stairs, ladders and walkways</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1984</td>
<td>Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 5446:-</td>
<td>Components of automatic fire alarm systems for residential premises</td>
<td>F7/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 1990</td>
<td>Specification for self-contained smoke alarms and point-type smoke detectors</td>
<td>F7/AS1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amends: 6863, 7648, 9628</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6037:-</td>
<td>Code of practice for the Planning, design, installation and use of permanently installed access equipment</td>
<td>HB/SS 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1: 2003</td>
<td>Suspended access equipment</td>
<td>HB/SS 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2004</td>
<td>Travelling ladders and gantries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6374:-</td>
<td>Lining of equipment with polymeric materials for the process industries</td>
<td>Part 1: 1985 Specification for lining with sheet thermoplastics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 1984 Specification for lining with non-sheet applied thermoplastics</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 1984 Specification for lining with stoved thermosetting resins</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4: 1984 Specification for lining with cold curing thermosetting resins</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 5: 1985 Specification for lining with rubbers</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6464: 1984 Specification for reinforced plastics pipes, fittings and joints for process plants</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 6920:-</td>
<td>Suitability of non-metallic products for use in contact with water intended for human consumption with regard to their effect on the quality of the water</td>
<td>Part 1: 2000 Specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: 2000 Methods of tests</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3: 2000 High temperature tests</td>
<td>G12/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 7159: 1989 Code of practice for design and construction of glass-reinforced plastics (GRP) piping systems for individual plants or sites</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 7777: 1993 Flat bottomed, vertical, cylindrical storage tanks for low temperature service</td>
<td>Part 1: Guide to the general provisions applying for design, construction and installation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2: Specification for design and construction of single, double and full containment metal tanks for the storage of liquified gas at temperatures down to –165°C</td>
<td>Part 3: Recommendations for the design and construction of prestressed and reinforced concrete tanks and tank foundations and for the design and installation of tank insulation, tank lines and tank coating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 8004: 1986 Code of practice for foundations</td>
<td>B1/VM4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 10241: 2000 Steel threaded pipe fittings</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS EN 10253-2: 2007 Butt-welding pipe fittings – non-alloy and ferric alloy steels with specific inspection requirements</td>
<td>G10/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BS EN 10253-3: 2008 Butt-welding pipe fittings – wrought austenitic and austenitic-ferritic (duplex) stainless steels without specific inspection requirements


BS EN 12285: Workshop fabricated steel tanks
Part 1: 2003 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the underground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids
Part 2: 2005 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the aboveground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids

BS EN 12585: 1999 Glass plant, pipeline and fittings – Pipeline and fittings DN 15 to 1000 – compatibility and interchangeability

BS EN 13121-3: 2008 GRP tanks and vessels for use above ground. Design and workmanship

BS EN 14324: 2004 Brazing. Guidance on the application of brazed joints

Building Research Association of New Zealand


BRANZ Bulletin 411: 2001 Recommended timber cladding profiles

BRANZ EM 4: 2005 Evaluation method for jointing systems for flush finished fibre cement sheet

BRANZ EM 5: 2005 Evaluation method for adhesives and seam tapes for butyl and EPDM rubber membranes

BRANZ EM 6: 2011 Evaluation method for window and door support mechanisms or bars

BRANZ House Insulation Guide: 1995

BRANZ Paper C1: 1978 A construction guide to home insulation (second edition)

BRANZ Technical paper P21: 1991 A wall bracing test and evaluation procedure

BRANZ Supplement to P21 An evaluation method of P21 test results for use with NZS 3604: 1990

BRANZ Technical paper P36: 1983 Food processing floors, a guide to design, materials and construction. W.R. Sharman
Publications Referenced

NE W ZE ALAND B U I L D I N G C O D E H A N D B O O K

10 October 2011

Amend 11 Sep 2010

BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 Structural joints – strength and stiffness evaluation
Albrecht Stoecklein and Mark Bassett

Cement & Concrete Association of New Zealand
CCANZ CP01: 2011 Code of Practice for weathertight concrete and concrete masonry construction

Master Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers NZ Inc and Water New Zealand
NZ Backflow testing standard 2011AS1 3.6.1 b), 3.7.2 Field testing of backflow prevention devices and verification of air gaps

New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc
New Zealand Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice: 2008

The National Association of Steel Framed Housing Inc (NASH)
NASH Standard: Residential and Low Rise Steel Framing Part 1 2010 Design Criteria

Government Departments and Agencies

Department of Labour
Workplace exposure standards and biological indices for New Zealand: 1992

Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries
MQ 1: 1988 Qual approvals manual

Ministry of Economic Development
NZECP 34: 2001 Electrical safety distances
NZECP 36: 1993 Harmonic levels
NZECP 51: 2004 Homeowner/occupier’s electrical wiring work in domestic installations
NZECP 54: 2001 Installation of recessed luminaires and auxiliary equipment

Ministry of Health
Ministry of Health: 2005 Drinking Water Standards for New Zealand
Ministry of Health: 2006 Household water supplies: the selection, operation and maintenance of individual household water supplies

Where quoted

SH/AS1
H1/Defs
E2/AS3
G12/AS1, HB/SS 7
E2/AS1
B1/AS1
F1/VM1, G4/VM1
G3/AS1
G9/VM1
G9/VM1
G9/AS1
C/AS1, G9/AS1
SH/AS1
SH/AS1
Ministry of Transport
Power Lift Rules: 1989
Rules for power lifts not exceeding 750 watts (one horsepower): 1985

SCION
Measurement of moisture content of wood

National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd (NIWA)
Temperature Normals for New Zealand 1961-1990
by A I Tomlinson and J Sansom (ISBN 0478083343)

New Zealand Legislation
Chartered Professional Engineers of New Zealand Act 2002
Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987
Fire Safety and Evacuation of Buildings Regulations 2006
Gas Regulations 1993
Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996
Hazardous Substances (Classification) Regulations 2001
Hazardous Substances (Classes 1 to 5 Controls) Regulations 2001
Hazardous Substances (Dangerous Goods and Scheduled Toxic Substances) Transfer Notice 2004
Hazardous Substances (Disposal) Regulations 2001
Hazardous Substances (Emergency Management) Regulations 2001
Health & Safety in Employment Act 1992
Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 2006
Resource Management Act 1991
Resource Management (National Environment Standards relating to certain Pollutants, Dioxins and other Toxins) Regulations: 2004 (NESAQ)

New Zealand Geomechanics Society
Guidelines for the field descriptions of soils and rocks in engineering use. Nov 1988

Australian Publications
Building Control Commission, State of Victoria, Australia
Smoke management in large spaces in buildings: 1998
Milke and Klote
Publications Referenced

Australia/NZ Publications

Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council
Guidelines for assessment and management of contaminated sites: 1992

British Publications

Building Research Establishment (UK)
BRE Defect action sheet DAS 131: May 1989
External walls: Combustible external plastics insulation:
Horizontal fire barriers
BRE Report 135: 1988
BRE Report 186: 1990
Design principles for smoke ventilation in enclosed shopping centres. Morgan and Gardner
BRE Report 258: 1992
Design approaches for smoke control in atrium buildings. Hansell and Morgan

Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers, London
CIBSE Code Series A: 1996
Air distribution systems

International Publications

EIFS Industry Members Association
EIMA 101.91: 1992 Standard Guide for resin of resin coated glass fibre mesh in exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS), Class PB.

The European Committee for Standardisation
EN 81:- Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts
Part 1: 1998 Electric lifts
Part 2: 1998 Hydraulic lifts
EN 115: 1983 Safety rules for the construction of escalators and passenger conveyors
EN 12380: 1999 Air admittance valves for drainage systems – Requirements and test methods
Eurocode 1: Basis of design actions on structures
Part 2.2: Actions on structures exposed to fire

Where quoted

F1/VM1
C/AS1
C/AS1
C/AS1
G4/VM1/AS1
E2/AS1
D2/AS1, HB/SS 8
D2/AS1, HB/SS 8
D2/AS3, HB/SS 8
G13/AS1
C/AS1
### International Standards Organisation, Geneva

- ICBO Evaluation Services Inc AC148: Acceptance criteria for flashing materials
- ISO 140/VII: 1978 Field measurements of impact sound insulation of floors
- ISO 9223: 1992 Corrosion of metals and alloys; corrosivity of atmospheres; classification
- ISO 11600: 2002 Building Construction – Jointing products Classification and requirements for sealants

### World Health Organisation/Food and Agriculture Organisation

**Environmental Health Criteria 70**

- “Environment health criteria” for various chemicals
- IARC Monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans for individual chemicals, groups of chemicals, or processes. Published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer
- Principles for the safety assessment of food additives and contaminants in food, Geneva: 1987

Where quoted

- E2/AS1
- G6/VM1
- E2/AS1
- E2/AS1, SH/AS1
- E2/AS1, SH/AS1
United States of America Publications

American National Standards Institute and American Society of Mechanical Engineers

ANSI/ASME B16.1: 1989 Cast iron pipe flanges and flanged fittings, Class 25, 125, 250 and 800

ANSI/ASME B16.3: 1985 Malleable-iron threaded fittings, Classes 150 and 300

ANSI/ASME B16.5: 1988 Pipe flanges and flanged fittings, steel-nickel alloy and other special alloys


ANSI B16.11: 1980 Forged steel fittings, socket-welding and threaded

American Petroleum Institute

API SPEC 5L: 1991 Specification for line pipe

API STD 1104: 1988 Welding of pipelines and related facilities

American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)

Design of smoke management systems. Klor and Milke 1992

American Society of Sanitary Engineers

ASSE 1050: 1991 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing DWV systems stack type devices

ASSE 1051: 1992 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing drainage systems

American Society for Testing and Materials

ASTM A 53 – 90a Specification for pipe, steel, black and hot-dipped, zinc-coated welded and seamless

ASTM A 106 – 91a Specification for seamless carbon steel pipe for high temperature service

Where quoted

G10/AS1

G10/AS1

G10/AS1

G10/AS1

G10/AS1

G10/AS1
ASTM D 1143: 1981 Test method for piles under static axial compressive load


ASTM D 2240: 2005 Standard Test method for Rubber Property


Amend 12 Oct 2011

Amend 11 and 12


ASTM E 96: 2005 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials

Amend 12 Oct 2011

Amend 11 Sep 2010

Amend 12 Oct 2011


ASTM E 336: 1990 Method for measurement of airborne sound insulation in buildings

ASTM E 413: 1987 Classification for rating sound insulation

ASTM E 492: 1990 Test method for laboratory measurement of impact sound transmission through floor-ceiling assemblies using a tapping machine

Amend 10 and 11


ASTM E 989: 1989 Classification for determination of impact insulation class (IIC)


Where quoted

B1/VM4

SH/AS1

E2/AS1

SH/AS1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

E2/AS1

G6/VM1

G6/VM1

G6/VM1

SH/AS1

G6/VM1

E2/AS1

Amend 12 Oct 2011
ASTM G 154: 2006 Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

Amend 12 Oct 2011
ASTM G 155: 2005 Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

International Conference of Building Officials, America
Proscenium fire safety curtains

Test method for the evaluation of thermal barriers

National Fire Protection Association of America
NFPA 92B: 1995 Guide for smoke management systems in malls, atria and large areas

NFPA 285: 1998 Standard method of test for the evaluation of flammability characteristics of exterior non load bearing wall assemblies containing components using the intermediate scale, multi-storey test apparatus

United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
USEPA SW 846: 1986 Test methods for evaluating solid waste

Amend 11 Sep 2010
Federal Specification Standard TT-S-00230C: Elastomeric type, cold applied single component for caulking, sealing, and glazing in buildings, building areas (plazas, decks, pavements, and other structures)


Where quoted
E2/AS1
E2/AS1
E2/AS1
C/AS1
C/AS1
C/AS1
F1/VM1
F1/VM1
E2/AS1, SH/AS1
HB/SS 7
United States Public Health Service
Toxicological profiles on individual chemicals. Prepared by the Agency for Toxicological Substances and Disease Registry, in collaboration with the US Environmental Protection Agency

Miscellaneous Publication

Where quoted
F1/VM1
Definitions

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), an allotment is taken—
(a) to be a continuous area of land even if part of it is physically
separated from any other part by a road or in any other manner,
unless the division of the allotment into those parts has been
allowed by a subdivision consent granted under the Resource
Management Act 1991 or a subdivision approval under any
former enactment relating to the subdivision of land:
(b) to include the balance of any land from which any allotment is being
or has been subdivided.”

Alter in relation to a building, includes to rebuild, re-erect, repair, enlarge
and extend the building.

Alternative solution means a solution that is compliant with the Building Code
but is not part of the Compliance Document.

Aluminium flashings Aluminium flashings shall be a minimum thickness
of 0.7 mm, and formed from 5000 series in accordance with AS/NZS 1734
and, where pre-painted, have a factory-applied finish complying with
AS/NZS 2728.

Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings Aluminium-zinc coated steel
flashings shall be:
(a) BMT 0.55 mm minimum of steel for flashings generally
(b) BMT 0.4 mm of steel for roll-formed roll-top ridge flashings
(c) in aluminium-zinc coating of AZ150 to AS 1397, with a factory-applied
finish in accordance with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in sea spray zone
and corrosion zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.

Amenity means an attribute of a building which contributes to the health,
physical independence, and well being of the building’s users but which
is not associated with disease or a specific illness.

Anti-ponding board A board laid under the lowest row of concrete and clay
roof tiles and supports the roof underlay. The board is sloped to ensure
moisture under the tiles is directed to the exterior of the roof.

Appliance hearth A layer of non-combustible material under or near an
appliance. It may be either part of the building structure or an overlay
on a combustible floor.

Approved temperature data means the temperature data contained in
A I Tomlinson and J Sansom, Temperature Normals for New Zealand

Appurtenant structure, in relation to a dam, means a structure that is integral
to the proper functioning of the dam.

Apron flashing A near flat or sloping flashing with a vertical upstand,
used at junctions between roofs and walls.
**Asbestos** as defined by the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1983 means:

(a) Actinolite, amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or tremolite; or  
(b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph a) of this definition; or  
(c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of any such mineral; or  
(d) A material or article that is contaminated by any such material.

**COMMENT:**  
Asbestos now has the meaning given to it by Regulation 2 of the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1998. This meaning is:

(a) Amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous actinolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or fibrous tremolite; or  
(b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or  
(c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or  
(d) A material or article that is contaminated by a mineral specified in paragraph (a):

**Atmospheric burner** A burner system where all the air for combustion is induced by the inspirating effect of a gas injector and/or by natural draught in the combustion chamber without mechanical assistance.

**Attached garage** A garage that shares a common wall or walls with a habitable building, and is enclosed by roof and wall claddings that are continuous with the habitable part of the building.

**Authority** means the Building Industry Authority that was established under the Building Act 1991.

**COMMENT:**  
The Authority was dissolved under the Building Act 2004 and its functions and powers transferred to the Department of Building and Housing.

**Backcountry hut** means a building that—

(a) is located on land that is administered by the Department of Conservation for conservation, recreational, scientific, or other related purposes, including any land administered under any of the following:  
   (i) the Conservation Act 1987;  
   (ii) the National Parks Act 1980;  
   (iii) the Reserves Act 1977; and  
(b) is intended to provide overnight shelter to any person who may visit and who carries his or her own food, bedding, clothing, and outdoor equipment; and  
(c) contains only basic facilities, which may include (but are not limited to) any or all of the following:  
   (i) sleeping platforms or bunks:  
   (ii) mattresses:  
   (iii) food preparation surfaces:
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(iv) appliances for heating:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) appliances for cooking:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi) toilets; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) has been certified by the Director-General as being in a location that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheelchair users are unlikely to be able to visit; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) is intended to be able to sleep—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) no more than 20 people in its backcountry hut sleeping area; and</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) no more than 40 people in total; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) does not contain any connection, except by radiocommunications,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to a network utility operator]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backcountry hut sleeping area means the area of a backcountry hut that</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contains sleeping platforms, bunks, or beds that are—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) within the same room as a food preparation or eating area; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) in a fully enclosed room that is separate from any food preparation or eating area and has—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) internal walls that limit the spread of fire; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) the means of direct egress to outside the hut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backflow A flowing back or reversal of the normal direction of the flow caused by back-pressure and includes back-siphonage.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backflow prevention device A device that prevents backflow.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backing rod Closed cell polyethylene foam (PEF) rod inserted into gap to provide backing support for foam air seal or sealant.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-pressure A backflow condition caused by the downstream pressure becoming greater than the supply pressure.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-siphonage Backflow condition caused by the supply pressure becoming less than the downstream pressure.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baluster A post providing the support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baluster An infil member that provides support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balustrade The infill parts of a barrier (typically between floor and top rail).</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-F4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basement Any firecell or part of a firecell below the level of the lowest final exit.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT: Because fire safety precautions are increased with increases in escape height, the precautions for basements increase with basement depth. Thus a single floor building with one basement level is treated as a two floor building, a single floor building with three basement levels as a four floor building and the requirements of C/AS1 Table 4.1 shall be applied downwards as opposed to upwards for levels above ground.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base metal thickness (BMT) The thickness of the bare or base metal before any subsequent coating, such as galvanizing.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batten See ceiling batten, tile batten.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bird’s beak</strong></td>
<td>A double fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <em>flashing</em> to stiffen the edge and to assist in deflecting moisture away from the <em>cladding system</em> below. Refer also <em>Kick-out</em> and <em>Drip edge</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> A <em>bird’s beak</em> is used at the bottom of a <em>capping</em> to deflect water away from the <em>enclosed balustrade cladding</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blocking</strong></td>
<td>Solid timber having the same depth as the joists and set at right angles between the joists to stiffen and prevent them from buckling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bond, running or stretcher</strong></td>
<td>The <em>bond</em> when the units of each course overlap the units in the preceding course by between 25% and 75% of the length of the units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bottom plate</strong></td>
<td>A plate placed under the bottom end of <em>studs</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Boundary</strong></td>
<td>means any <em>boundary</em> which is shown on a survey plan approved by the Chief Surveyor and which is deposited in the Titles Office whether or not a new title has been issued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Boundary joist</strong></td>
<td>A joist running along the outer ends of the floor joists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing</strong></td>
<td>Any method employed to provide lateral support to a <em>building</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing capacity</strong></td>
<td>Strength of <em>bracing</em> of a whole <em>building</em> or of elements within a <em>building</em>. <em>Bracing capacity</em> is measured in <em>bracing units</em> (BUs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing demand</strong></td>
<td>The horizontal forces to be resisted by a whole <em>building</em> or by an element within a <em>building</em>. These horizontal forces are a result of wind or earthquake action. <em>Bracing demand</em> forces are measured in <em>bracing units</em> (BUs).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing line</strong></td>
<td>A line along or across a <em>building</em> containing <em>wall bracing elements</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing rating</strong></td>
<td>The lateral load resistance assigned, for example, to a <em>wall bracing system</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bracing unit (BU)</strong></td>
<td>A <em>bracing</em> unit is a measure of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) the horizontal force (<em>bracing demand</em>) on the <em>building</em> (1 kiloNewton is equal to 20 bracing units)</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the resistance to horizontal force (<em>bracing capacity</em>) of <em>building elements</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Branch discharge pipe</strong></td>
<td>A <em>discharge pipe</em> that serves one or more <em>fixture discharge pipes</em> for any one floor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Branch vent pipe</strong></td>
<td>A <em>vent pipe</em> that serves two or more <em>fixture vent pipes</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building</strong></td>
<td>has the meaning given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 8 states:

“8 Building: what it means and includes:

1. In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, *building*—
   1. means a *temporary or permanent movable or immovable structure* (including a structure intended for occupation by people, animals, machinery, or chattels); and
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building height</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The vertical distance between the floor level of the lowest final exit from the building; and the highest occupied floor level containing or supporting any purpose group other than IE, IA or ID, or penthouses used to enclose stairways, liftshafts or machinery rooms located on or within the roof.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building levy</strong></td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building method or product</strong></td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has the meaning given to it by section 20 of the Building Act 2004. Section 20(2)(c) states:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“(c) building methods, methods of construction, building design, or building materials (building methods or products) that have a current product certificate issued under section 269.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Building performance index (BPI)</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in relation to a building, means the heating energy of the building divided by the product of the heating degrees total and the sum of the floor area and the total wall area, and so is calculated in accordance with the following formula:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \[
| \text{BPI} = \frac{\text{heating energy}}{\text{heating degrees total} \times (\text{floor area} + \text{total wall area})}
| \] | |
| **Building work** | BA04 |
| (a) means work— | |
| (i) for, or in connection with, the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building; and | |
| (ii) on an allotment that is likely to affect the extent to which an existing building on that allotment complies with the Building Code; and | |
| (b) includes sitework; and | |
| (c) includes design work (relating to building work) that is design work of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be restricted building work for the purposes of this Act; and | |
| (d) in Part 4, and the definition in this section of “supervise”, also includes design work (relating to building work) of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be building work for the purposes of Part 4 | |
| **Building warrant of fitness (BWoF)** | HB |
| means the warrant of fitness an owner of a building must supply to a territorial authority under section 108 of the Building Act 2004. | |
| **Building wrap** or **building underlay** | Simple House |
| See wall underlay. | |
Definitions

**Butt flashing** A preformed wall *flashing*, used to flash windows and corners on horizontal profiled metal wall *cladding*. A *butt flashing* is shaped to underflash the *cladding*, with the *cladding* butting against the exposed box portion of the *flashing*.

**Butyl rubber** and **EPDM flashings** *Butyl rubber* and *EPDM flashings* shall be a minimum thickness of 1.0 mm, and shall comply with the following parts of Table 1 in ASTM D6134:

- (b) tensile strength
- (c) elongation
- (d) water absorption
- (e) water vapour transmission
- (f) heat aging followed by:
  - i) tensile strength
  - ii) elongation.

**Cable car**—

- (a) means a vehicle—
  - (i) that carries people or goods on or along an inclined plane or a suspended cable; and
  - (ii) that operates wholly or partly outside of a *building*;

And

- (iii) the traction for which is supplied by a cable or any other means; but

- (b) does not include a lift that carries people or goods between the floors of a *building*.

**Cantilevered deck** A *deck* where no support is provided at the outer extremities of the *deck*.

**COMMENT:**
*Cantilevered decks* are often constructed by extending framing members through the *cladding* beyond the *building* face. *Cantilevered decks* are sometimes known as balconies.

**Canterbury earthquake region** is the area contained within the boundaries of the Christchurch City Council, the Selwyn District Council and the Waimakariri District Council.

**Capacity** The load resistance of a connector or fixing.

**Capping** A *flashing* formed to cover the top of an *enclosed balustrade* or *parapet*. Also known as a coping.

**Cavity barrier** A *construction* provided to close openings within a *concealed space* against the passage of *fire*, or to restrict the spread of *fire* within such spaces.

**Cavity batten** A vertical packing member used to create a *drained cavity* as part of a *cladding system*. 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity spacer</strong> A short block used to provide intermittent support for fixings or pipe penetrations through a <em>drained cavity</em>, while not interrupting drainage within the cavity.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A <em>cavity spacer</em> is required to be set to a slight fall (5° minimum from horizontal) to allow drainage of any moisture from the top.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cavity wall</strong> A term used to describe a wall that incorporates a <em>drained cavity</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ceiling batten</strong> A horizontal member fixed below <em>rafters</em>, or truss bottom chords to which the ceiling <em>lining</em> is attached.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Certificate of acceptance</strong> means a certificate issued under section 96 of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Certificate for public use</strong> means a certificate issued under section 363A of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Change the use</strong> for the purposes of sections 114 and 115 of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>, change the use, in relation to a <em>building</em>, means to change the use (determined in accordance with regulation 6) of all or a part of the <em>building</em> from one use (the old use) to another (the new use) and with the result that the requirements for compliance with the <em>Building Code</em> in relation to the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for compliance with the <em>Building Code</em> in relation to the old use.</td>
<td>BR2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Check valve (or non-return valve)</strong> A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a <em>backflow prevention device</em>.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney</strong> A <em>non-combustible</em> structure which encloses one or more <em>flues</em>, <em>fireplaces</em> or other heating appliances.</td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-C, CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney back</strong> The <em>non-combustible</em> wall forming the back of a <em>fireplace</em>.</td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney base</strong> That part of a <em>chimney</em> which houses the <em>fireplace</em>.</td>
<td>CD-B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney breast</strong> The front <em>fireplace wall construction</em> above the <em>fireplace</em> opening.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimney jamb</strong> The side walls of a <em>fireplace</em>.</td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cladding</strong> The exterior weather-resistant surface of a <em>building</em>.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Includes any supporting substrate and, if applicable, surface treatment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cladding system</strong> The outside or exterior weather-resistant surface of a <em>building</em>, including <em>roof cladding</em> and <em>roof underlays</em>, wall <em>cladding</em> and <em>wall underlays</em>, and cavity components, rooflights, windows, doors and all penetrations, <em>flashings</em>, seals, joints and junctions.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where required by this Acceptable Solution, the <em>cladding system</em> shall include a <em>drained cavity</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cladding system</strong> The weatherproof wall or <em>roof</em> enclosure of a <em>building</em>, including underlays, <em>claddings</em> and their fixings, windows, doors and all penetrations, <em>flashings</em>, seals, joints and junctions.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Classified use</strong> means a <em>classified use</em> listed in clause A1 of the <em>Building Code</em>.</td>
<td>BR1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cleaning eye</strong> A small <em>diameter access point</em> usually formed as part of a fitting or trap.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definition**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cleared ground level (CGL)</strong></td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ground level after completion of site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excavation and removal of all harmful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>material, but before excavation for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foundations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Code compliance certificate</strong></td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means a certificate issued by a building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consent authority under section 95 of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combined waste pipe</strong></td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A discharge pipe which serves two or more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waste pipes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combustible</strong></td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See non-combustible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combustion appliance</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A slow combustion stove, a free standing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metal cone fireplace, a cast iron pot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belly stove, an oil burning space heater,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or a vented gas burning heater.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common extract duct</strong></td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A mechanical ventilation duct that extracts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from different household units, and may</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contain air, moisture and contaminant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common ramp</strong></td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A ramp which is used, or intended to be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used by the public whether as of right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or not, and is not a service ramp or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accessible ramp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common stairway</strong></td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A stairway which is used, or intended to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be used by the public whether as of right</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or not, and is not a private stairway,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service stairway or accessible stairway.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compliance document</strong></td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has the meaning given to it by section 22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 22 states:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“22. Compliance document for use in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>establishing compliance with Building Code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) The chief executive may, by notice in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Gazette, issue a document for use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in establishing compliance with the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Code (a Compliance Document).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) A person who complies with a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance Document must, for the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purposes of this Act, be treated as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>having complied with the provisions of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Building Code to which the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document relates.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Subsection (2) is subject to any</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regulations referred to in section 20”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compliance schedule</strong></td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means a compliance schedule required under</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section 100 of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Compliance schedule statement</strong></td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>means a statement issued by a territorial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or regional authority referred to in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section 105(e) of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concealed space</strong></td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any part of the space within a building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that cannot be seen from an occupied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>space.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This term includes any ceiling space,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof space, space under a raised floor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(such as computer rooms, floors, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stages), plenums, spaces under a tiered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor, “left-over spaces” created when</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some structural element or the like has</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been covered in; small service or duct</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spaces within the volume of a firecell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and the like, but not a protected shaft.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concrete slab shrinkage control joint</strong></td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A line along which the horizontal strength</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the slab is deliberately reduced so</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that any shrinkage in the slab will</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result in a crack forming along that line.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Department</strong> means the Department of Building and Housing.</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Department of Conservation</strong> means the department of State established by section 5 of the Conservation Act 1987.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Determination</strong> means a determination made by the Chief Executive under subpart 1 of Part 3 of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Developed length</strong> The total length along the centre line of a pipe including fittings and bends.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diagonal brace</strong> A member of a framed building fixed diagonally and used to resist tension or compression or both.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diameter (or bore)</strong> The nominal internal diameter.</td>
<td>CD-G12, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Direct fixed</strong> A term used to describe a wall cladding attached directly to the wall framing, without the use of a drained cavity.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Director-General</strong> has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge pipe</strong> Any pipe that is intended to convey discharge from sanitary fixtures or sanitary appliances.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge stack</strong> A discharge pipe that has one or more discharge pipe connections, and which is vented at one end via a discharge stack vent.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge stack vent</strong> A vent pipe connected to the top of the discharge stack.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Discharge unit</strong> The unit of measure for the discharge (hydraulic load) in the plumbing system, and is based on the rate, duration and frequency of discharge from a sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Doorset</strong> A complete assembly comprising a door leaf or leaves including any glazed or solid panels adjacent to or over the leaves within the door frame including hardware or other inbuilt features; and a door frame, if any, with its fixings to the wall and, for a sliding or tilting door, all guides and their respective fixings to the lintel, wall or sill.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dormer or dormer window</strong> A framed structure that projects from a sloping roof, and has a window at its outer end.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drain</strong> A pipe normally laid below ground level including fittings and equipment and intended to convey foul water or surface water to an outfall.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drained cavity</strong> A cavity space, immediately behind a wall cladding, that has vents at the base of the wall. Also known as a drained and vented cavity and referred to in E2/AS1 as a cavity or drained cavity. A drained cavity assists drying by allowing water which occasionally penetrates the wall cladding system to drain to the exterior of the building, and any remaining moisture to dry by evaporation. Where E2/AS1 requires a nominal 20 mm drained cavity, the depth shall be between limits of 18 mm and 25 mm. For definition of masonry veneer cavity refer to SNZ HB 4236.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drain vent pipe</strong> Any pipe which is intended to permit the movement of air into and out of the drain and sewer.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definition | Source
---|---
Draught diverter A device, without moving parts, fitted in the *flue* of an appliance for isolating the combustion system from the effects of pressure changes in the secondary *flue*. | CD-G4, CD-C
Drip edge Fold(s) applied to the edge of a horizontal metal *flashing* to deflect moisture away from the *cladding system* below. Refer also *Bird’s beak* and *Kick-out*. | CD-E2
Durable Resistant to wear and decay. | CD-B2
Dwang A short (usually horizontal) member fixed between vertical *framing* timbers. Also known as nogging. | CD-E2

**E**

Early childhood centre A facility used for the education or care of children under the age of six, and required to be licensed under the Education (Early Childhood Centres) Regulations 1998. | CD-C

Eaves That part of the roof *construction*, including *cladding*, fascia and eaves gutter (spouting), that extends beyond the exterior face of the wall. | CD-E2

Eaves bearer or soffit bearer or sprocket A horizontal member attached to the end of a truss or a *rafter* and to a *stud*, or a ribbon board, or a soffit plate, and to which the *eaves lining* is attached. | Simple House

EPDM Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer – a thermosetting synthetic rubber. See *butyl rubber*. | Simple House

EIFS (Exterior Insulation and Finish System) A polystyrene sheet-based *cladding system* that uses mesh reinforced polymer-modified cement-based or polymer-based plaster base coats and a protective top coating. | CD-E2

Electrical fixed appliance An electrical appliance which is fixed-wired to the *electrical installation*, or intended to remain permanently attached and form part of the *building*. | Code

Electrical installation Any *electrical fixed appliances* and components used in the reticulation of electricity, which are intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of the *building*. | Code

Electrical supply system The source of electricity external to the *electrical installation*. | Code

Electrolytic corrosion Galvanic corrosion commonly resulting from the contact of two dissimilar metals when an electrolyte such as water is present. | CD-E2

Enclosed balustrade A timber-framed barrier with *cladding* across all exposed faces. Refer also Parapet. | CD-E2

Enclosed deck A *deck*, whether over an interior or exterior space, that has an impermeable upper surface and is closed on the underside. May also be known as a balcony. | CD-E2

Energy work means— | BA04
(a) gasfitting; or
(b) prescribed electrical work
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Energy work certificate</strong> means a certificate of the kind referred to in section 19(1)(e) of the <em>Building Act 2004</em>.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Envelope complexity</strong> The categorisation of the complexity of the total building envelope into one of four classes, depending on the particular features of the building as specified in E2/AS1.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer)</strong> A thermosetting synthetic rubber used as a resilient part of a sealing washer, or as a roof membrane.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Equivalent aerodynamic area</strong> The area of an equivalent aerodynamically perfect orifice, and equals the penetration area required by the natural ventilation device multiplied by the discharge coefficient determined under test.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Escape height</strong> The height between the floor level in the firecell being considered and the floor level of the required final exit which is the greatest vertical distance above or below that firecell.</td>
<td>CD-C, CD-F3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Escape route</strong> A continuous unobstructed route from any occupied space in a building to a final exit to enable occupants to reach a safe place, and shall comprise one or more of the following: open paths, protected paths and safe paths.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Essential service</strong> In the context of an electrical installation means emergency lighting, firemen’s lifts, alarms, water pumps, sprinklers, detectors, ventilation systems and public address systems necessary for the safety of people in buildings.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Estimated value</strong> in relation to building work, means the estimated aggregate of the values, determined in accordance with section 10 of the Goods and Services Tax Act 1985, of all goods and services to be supplied for the building work.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Evacuation time</strong> The time taken by the occupants of the building to evacuate the building to a final exit.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exitway</strong> All parts of an escape route protected by fire or smoke separations, or by distance when exposed to open air, and terminating at a final exit.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Expansion joint</strong> A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also Control joint.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definition

**External wall** Any exterior face of a *building* within 30° of vertical, consisting of *primary* and/or *secondary elements* intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment, but which may also contain *unprotected areas*.

**COMMENT:**
A roof is an *external wall* if within 30° of the vertical.

**External wall** An outer wall of a *building*.

**External wall** Any vertical exterior face of a *building* consisting of *primary* and/or *secondary elements* intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment.

**F**

**Factor of safety** in relation to any *building* means the ratio of resisting forces to applied forces for a given loading condition. It is generally expressed to two significant figures.

**Falsework**, in relation to *building work* or the maintenance of a *building*—
(a) means any temporary structure or framework used to support materials, equipment, or an assembly; and
(b) includes steel tubes, adjustable steel props, proprietary frames, or other means used to support a permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting; but
(c) does not include scaffolding or cranes used for support.

**Final exit** The point at which an *escape route* terminates by giving direct access to a *safe place*.

**COMMENT:**
*Final exits* are commonly the external doors from a ground floor, but this applies only if such doors open directly onto a *safe place*. If a *safe place* can be reached only by passing down an alley, or across a bridge, then the *final exit* is not reached until the end of such an alley or bridge. *Final exits*, therefore, should be seen strictly as a point of *arrival*, rather than as any particular element of a *building*. They are determined entirely by the definition of *safe place*.

**Finished ground level (FGL)** The level of the ground against any part of a *building* after all backfilling and/or landscaping and/or surface paving has been completed.

**Fire** The state of combustion during which flammable materials burn producing heat, toxic gases, or smoke or flame or any combination of these.

**Firecell** Any space including a group of contiguous spaces on the same or different levels within a *building*, which is enclosed by any combination of *fire separations*, *external walls*, roofs, and floors.

**COMMENT:**
Floors, in this context, includes ground floors and those in which the underside is exposed to the external environment (eg. when cantilevered). Note also that internal floors between *firecells* are *fire separations*.

**Firecell rating (F)** The *fire resistance rating (FRR)* intended to prevent fire spread to another *firecell*, for sufficient time to provide for safe evacuation of occupants and protection of adjacent *housing units* and sleeping areas in the *building* of *fire* origin and fire fighters engaged in fire fighting and rescue operations.
Definitions

**Definition**  
**Source**

**Forced or induced draught appliance** An appliance where all or part of the air for combustion is provided by a fan or other mechanical device which is an integral part of the combustion system.  
CD-G4

**Former Act** means the Building Act 1991.  
BA04

**Foul water** The discharge from any sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance.  
Code

**Foul water drainage system** Drains, joints and fittings normally laid underground and used specifically for the conveyance of water from the plumbing system to an outfall.  
Code

**Foundation** Those parts of a building transmitting and distributing loads to the ground through a footing.  
Simple House

**Framing** Timber members to which lining, cladding, flooring, or decking is attached; or which are depended upon for supporting the structure, or for resisting forces applied to it.  
CD-E2

**Free outlet (push through)** In the context of storage water heaters means a water heater with a tap on the cold water inlet so designed that the hot water is discharged through an open outlet.  
CD-G12

**Functional requirements** in relation to a building, means those functions which a building is to perform for the purposes of the Building Act 2004.  
BA04

**G**

**Gable** Triangular part of an external wall between the planes of the roof and the line of the eaves.  
Simple House

**Galvanised steel flashings** Galvanised steel flashings shall be:

(a) BMT of 0.55 mm minimum for flashings generally  
(b) BMT of 0.4 mm minimum for roll-formed roll-top ridge flashings  
(c) Hot-dipped zinc coated Z275 with a factory-applied finish that complies with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in Sea Spray and corrosion Zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.  
Simple House

**Gantry** A structure covering a public way providing protection from both the side and overhead.  
CD-F5

**Gasfitting** has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976.  
BA04/PGDA

Section 2 states:

“(a) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) beyond the outlet of any gas measurement system supplying a consumer or gas refueller with gas (or, where there is no such gas measurement system, beyond the custody transfer point of the place at which gas is supplied to a consumer or gas refueller):”  

(b) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) that convey gas from any gas storage container in the possession or control of a consumer or gas refueller, and—
(i) In the case of liquefied petroleum gas, that are downstream of the first regulator beyond that container; or
(ii) In the case of any other gas or where there is no such regulator (in the case of liquefied petroleum gas), that are downstream of the outlet valve of the container:
(c) The work of fixing or unfixing the whole or part of the control system of any gas appliance—
but does not include—
(d) Work on any gas storage container, including its fixing or unfixing; or
(e) Work on any gas transmission system or distribution system; or
(f) Work on any pipes or fittings supplied with liquefied petroleum gas from any gas storage container or containers that contains, or together contain, less than 15 kilograms net weight of liquefied petroleum gas; or
(g) Work in any circumstances where the exclusions in section 3(2) of the Gas Act 1992 apply:]

**Gather** That part of a chimney where the transition from fireplace to stack occurs.

**Good ground** means any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (i.e. an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a factor of safety of 3.0), but excludes:

(a) Potentially compressible ground such as topsoil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids,
(b) Expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested, from the liquid limit, in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6,
(c) Any ground which could forseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, liquefaction, lateral spread — for the Canterbury earthquake region only), seasonal swelling and shrinking, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolution of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.

**COMMENT:**

Soils (excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above) tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as good ground for building foundations if penetration resistance is no less than:

(a) 3 blows per 75 mm at depths no greater than the footing width.
(b) 2 blows per 75 mm at depths greater than the footing width.

Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed footing.
**Definitions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Means of escape from fire</strong>, in relation to a building that has a floor area,—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) means continuous unobstructed routes of travel from any part of the floor area of that building to a place of safety, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) includes all active and passive protection features required to warn people of fire and to assist in protecting people from the effects of fire in the course of their escape from the fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Member span</strong> The clear distance between supports, measured along the member.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Membrane</strong> A non-metallic material, usually synthetic, used as a fully supported roof cladding, deck surface or, in conjunction with other claddings, as gutters or flashings.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minister</strong> means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of a warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minor private stairway</strong> A private stairway not on a main thoroughfare, and intended to provide infrequent access to a single room which is not a living area or kitchen.</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MSG</strong> Machine stress graded refers to timber that is initially sorted by machine, calibrated to NZS 3603. See also VSG.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multi-unit dwelling</strong> Applies to a building or use which contains more than one separate household or family.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMMENT:**
For fire safety purposes each household unit is a separate firecell.

**N**

**Natural draught** The flow produced by the tendency of warmed gases to rise. | CD-G4 |
| **Natural hazard** has the meaning given to it by section 71 of the Building Act 2004. | BA04 |
| Section 71(3) states: | |
| “(3) In this section and sections 72 to 74, natural hazard means any of the following: | |
| (a) erosion (including coastal erosion, bank erosion, and sheet erosion): | |
| (b) falling debris (including soil, rock, snow, and ice): | |
| (c) subsidence: | |
| (d) inundation (including flooding, overland flow, storm surge, tidal effects, and ponding): | |
| (e) slippage.” | |
| **Net openable area** is the area of windows or doors or other opening measured on the face dimensions of the openable building element concerned. | CD-G4 |
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Network utility operator</strong> means a person who—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution or transmission by pipeline of natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy; or (b) operates or proposes to operate a network for the purpose of—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001; or (ii) radiocommunications as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989; or (c) is an electricity operator or electricity distributor as defined in section 2 of the Electricity Act 1992 for the purpose of line function services as defined in that section; or (d) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution of water for supply (including irrigation); or (e) undertakes or proposes to undertake a drainage or sewerage system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nogging</strong> See <em>dwang</em></td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nominal pile width</strong> The least width of a pile in side view and is equal to the diameter in round piles.</td>
<td>CD-B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-combustible</strong> Materials shall be classified as non-combustible or combustible when tested to: AS 1530 – Part 1.</td>
<td>CD-B1, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-loadbearing stud</strong> A stud in a non-loadbearing wall.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-loadbearing wall</strong> A wall other than a loadbearing wall.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-return valve</strong> A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a hot or cold water system.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nosing</strong> The rounded projecting edge of a stair tread.</td>
<td>CD-D1, CD-F4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notice to fix</strong> has the meaning given to it by section 164(2) of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 164(2) states:

“(2) A responsible authority must issue to the specified person concerned a notice (a notice to fix) requiring the person—
(a) to remedy the contravention of, or to comply with, this Act or the regulations; or
(b) to correct the warrant of fitness; or
(c) to properly comply with the inspection, maintenance, or reporting procedures stated in the compliance schedule.”

**Notional boundary** The boundary which for fire safety purposes, is assumed to exist between two buildings on the same property under a single land title.

**COMMENT:**

A notional boundary may be located anywhere between the two buildings on the same property. It is not fixed and for the purposes of calculating permitted unprotected areas of each building it can be moved towards the other building thus maximising the permitted unprotected area.

**NUO system** means a system owned or controlled by a network utility operator. **NZBC** New Zealand Building Code.
Definitions

Occumant load. The greatest number of people likely to occupy a particular space within a building. It is determined by:
(a) Multiplying the number of people per m² (occupant density) for the activity being undertaken, by the total floor area, or
(b) For sleeping areas, counting the number of beds, or
(c) For fixed seating areas, counting the number of seats.

Occupied space. Any space within a building in which a person will be present from time to time during the intended use of the building.

Open path. That part of an escape route (including dead ends) not protected by fire or smoke separations, and which terminates at a final exit or exitway.

Open space. Includes land on which there is and will be no buildings and which has no roof over any part of it other than overhanging eaves.

Open vented storage water heater. A water heater incorporating a vent pipe which is permanently open to the atmosphere.

Other property. (a) means any land or buildings, or part of any land or buildings, that are—
(i) not held under the same allotment; or
(ii) not held under the same ownership; and
(b) includes a road.

Outdoor air. Air as typically comprising by volume:
(i) oxygen 20.94%
(ii) carbon dioxide 0.03%
(iii) nitrogen and other inert gases 79.03%.

Outfall. That part of the disposal system receiving surface water or foul water from the drainage system. For foul water, the outfall may include a sewer or a septic tank. For surface water, the outfall may include a natural water course, kerb and channel, or soakage system.

Over-pressure protection. Devices preventing the pressure in piping or appliances from exceeding a predetermined value.

Owner. in relation to land and any buildings on the land,—
(a) means the person who—
(i) is entitled to the rack rent from the land; or
(ii) would be so entitled if the land were let to a tenant at a rack rent; and
(b) includes—
(i) the owner of the fee simple of the land; and
(ii) any person who has agreed in writing, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to purchase the land or any leasehold estate or interest in the land or to take a lease of the land and who is bound by the agreement because the agreement is still in force.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parallel flashing</strong> A roof flashing that runs along the roof slope, parallel to the roof cladding profile. Also known as a longitudinal flashing.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parapet</strong> A timber-framed wall that extends above the level of the roof cladding. Refer also Enclosed balustrade.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Passive stack ventilator</strong> A system including a ventilation shaft which uses natural draught to ventilate spaces.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penetration</strong> A pipe, cable or duct passing through an opening in a fire separation.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Penstocks</strong> are conduits to control the flow of water in water supply, hydroelectric power and sewerage systems. Penstocks are normally equipped with a gate system and surge tank.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>People with disabilities</strong> People whose ability to use buildings is affected by mental, physical, hearing or sight impairment.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Performance criteria</strong> in relation to a building, means those qualitative or quantitative criteria that the building is required to satisfy in performing its functional requirement.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Permanent opening</strong> An opening which cannot be closed, this implies that doors, windows etc are NOT permanent openings, although door undercuts are.</td>
<td>CD-G4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Person includes</strong>—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) the Crown; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a corporation sole; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a body of persons (whether corporate or unincorporate)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Person with a disability</strong> means a person who has an impairment or a combination of impairments that limits the extent to which the person can engage in the activities, pursuits, and processes of everyday life, including, without limitation, any of the following:</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a physical, sensory, neurological, or intellectual impairment:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a mental illness.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Piping system</strong> An assembly of pipes, pipe fittings, gaskets, bolting and pipe supports.</td>
<td>CD-G14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pitch line</strong> The line joining the leading edge or nosings (if any) of successive stair treads within a single flight of stairs.</td>
<td>CD-F4 (Sep 07)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plans and specifications</strong>—</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) means the drawings, specifications, and other documents according to which a building is proposed to be constructed, altered, demolished, or removed; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) includes the proposed procedures for inspection during the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) in the case of the construction or alteration of a building, also includes—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) the intended use of the building; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) the specified systems that the applicant for building consent considers will be required to be included in a compliance schedule required under section 100; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(iii) the proposed procedures for inspection and routine maintenance for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the purposes of the compliance schedule for those specified systems.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plate</strong> A timber member supported by a foundation or studs to support</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and distribute the load from floors, walls, roofs or ceilings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>See bottom plate, top plate.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plumbing system</strong> Pipes, joints and fittings laid above ground and used</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the conveyance of foul water to the foul water drain, and includes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vent pipes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Post</strong> An isolated vertical member acting as a support.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Potable (and potable water)</strong> Water that is suitable for human</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consumption.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Potential impact classification</strong> is related to the consequence (effects)</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the dam failing, if it should release its stored contents. Consequences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>include loss of life, socio-economic, financial and environmental.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prescribed electrical work</strong> has the meaning given to it by section</td>
<td>BA04, EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2(1) of the Electricity Act 1992.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary element</strong> A building element providing the basic load</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bearing capacity to the structure, and which if affected by fire may</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initiate instability or premature structural collapse.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Suspended floors in multi-storey buildings are primary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Principal user</strong> A member of the primary group for which a building</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was constructed, and therefore explicitly excludes persons or groups of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persons providing care or control of that principal user group.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privacy</strong> The situation of being withdrawn from view.</td>
<td>CD-G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Private stairway</strong> A stairway used, or intended to be used, by the</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupants of a single household unit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privy</strong> A private room containing a receptacle (other than a WC) or an</td>
<td>CD-G1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excavation for excreted liquid or solid human waste, and with a means of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disposal or containment of the waste.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Producer statements</strong> are formal statements supplied by or on behalf of</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) an applicant for a building consent, or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) by or on behalf of a person who has carried out building work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that can be accepted by a building consent authority as verification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that certain work will be or has been carried out in accordance with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominated performance requirements of the Building Code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong> Although no longer expressly referred to in the Building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act 2004, these could be accepted and considered as part of the plans or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specifications.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Product certificate</strong> means a certificate issued under section 269 of</td>
<td>HB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Building Act 2004 that a building consent authority must accept as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>establishing compliance with the Building Code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Product certification accreditation body</strong> means the person referred to</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in section 261(2) of the Building Act 2004.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong> includes land, buildings, and goods; but does not include incorporeal forms of property.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proprietary fasteners</strong> Proprietary fasteners may be used where the fixing capacity of fixings are specifically identified in this [SH/AS1] Acceptable Solution. Manufacturers of a timber connector or fixing shall provide the following information on each package of fixings, or on a securely attached label:</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) the name, or registered trade name, or make and address of manufacturer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the materials used in manufacture including fasteners and corrosion protection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) the load capacity of the timber connector or fixing in kN determined in accordance with the following equation:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ R = \varphi \times Q_k \times n \times k ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( R = ) connector capacity in kN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \varphi = ) capacity reduction factor from NZS 3603</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( Q_k = ) characteristic value obtained by test in accordance with BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 or AS/NZS 2699: Part 2 as appropriate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( n = ) number of tested elements making up the complete joint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( k = ) modification factors from NZS 3603 (Section 4) as appropriate to specific application.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) fastener’s requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) details of intended use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) durability in accordance with Paragraph 2.5.4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protected path</strong> That portion of an exitway within a firecell which is protected from the effects of smoke by smoke separations.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protected shaft</strong> A space, other than a safe path, enclosed by fire separations or external walls used to house building services, lifts, or conveyors which pass from one firecell to another.</td>
<td>CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purlin</strong> A horizontal member laid to span across rafters or trusses, and to which the roof cladding is attached.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purlin</strong> Includes tile batten. A horizontal member laid to span across rafters or trusses and to which the roof cladding is attached.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose group</strong> The classification of spaces within a building according to the activity for which the spaces are used.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMMENT:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Where an easement, such as a right of way, occurs within an allotment, the relevant boundary shall remain the same as if the easement did not exist.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Boundaries within a cross-lease or company lease or licence are shown on a survey plan. In some cases the boundary is the external wall or roof of a building.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The unit title boundaries of principal units, accessory units, and common property are shown in the unit plan. A boundary is frequently an internal or external wall, an upper floor, or the roof of a building.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. A wall along a boundary between two allotments is called a “party wall” when the owners of the allotments each have legal rights in respect of that wall registered by way of easements on one or both titles. An internal wall between cross-leases, company leases, or unit titles, or between one of them and common property, is not generally called a party wall but in that case also the lessees, unit title holders, or corporate body concerned each have legal rights in respect of that wall. Such a wall separates areas which are other property in relation to each other, but the wall itself is part of each property. The fire protection consequence of that legal concept is that such a wall can be regarded as a fire separation providing protection against horizontal fire spread in each direction. In other words, that wall may provide the appropriate FRR instead of each property having its own wall of that FRR.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relief vent A vent pipe which is connected to a discharge stack below the lowest branch connection and which connects at its upper end to the discharge stack vent or terminates as an open vent.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reservoir Body of water impounded by one or more dams or dikes, inclusive of its shores and banks and of any facility or installation necessary for its operation.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ribbon board Includes soffit plate. A horizontal framing timber secured to, or checked into, the edges of studs and supporting eaves bearers.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ridge beam A single beam that supports rafters of a skillion roof.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk group A, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means buildings—</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) whose occupants are required to remain in the building until the main lighting system is restored; or</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) whose evacuation time is longer than 90 minutes.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk group B, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means buildings—</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) whose evacuation time is 30 minutes or longer but not longer than 90 minutes; or</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) whose occupant load is more than 1 000.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk group C, for the purposes of performance F6.3.4, means buildings not in risk group A or risk group B.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reservoir capacity Total or gross storage capacity of the reservoir at full supply level.</td>
<td>DG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk matrix A table that allows the calculation of a risk score by the allocation and summing of scores for a range of design and location factors applying to a specific building design.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Definitions

**Risk score** An aggregated numerical score for a proposed building as defined by E2/AS1. The risk score is determined by completion of the risk matrix. 

**Road** has the meaning ascribed to it by section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974 and includes a public place and also includes a motorway.

**Roddling point** A removable cap at ground level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.

**Roof** That part of a building having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of 60° or less to the horizontal.

**Roof** That part of the building having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of between 10° and 35° to the horizontal. See skillion roof.

**Roof underlay** An absorbent permeable building paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water in association with roof cladding performance.

The roof underlay shall have the properties in Table 23 of the Acceptable Solution E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture:

(a) absorbency of 100 g/m² or greater
(b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less
(c) water resistance of 100 mm or greater
(d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0
(e) shrinkage no more than 0.5%
(f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.

**Room-sealed appliance** An appliance designed so that air for combustion neither enters from, nor combustion products enter into, the room in which the appliance is located.

**Running bonds** See bond

**S**

**Saddle flashing** A flashing used to weatherproof the junction between a horizontal and vertical surface.

**Safe path** That part of an exitway which is protected from the effects of fire by fire separations, external walls, or by distance when exposed to open air.

**Safe place** A place of safety in the vicinity of a building, from which people may safely disperse after escaping the effects of a fire. It may be a place such as a street, open space, public space or an adjacent building.

**Safety colour** (green, red or yellow) A colour of specified properties to which a safety meaning is attributed.

**Safety glass** means a glass so treated or combined with other materials as to reduce the likelihood of injury to persons when it is cracked or broken.
Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Safety shut-off system</td>
<td>CD-G10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety sign</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety symbol</td>
<td>CD-F8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanitary appliance</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanitary fixture</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sanitation</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scaffolding</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scupper</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sealant</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary element</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary flow path</td>
<td>CD-E1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary private stairway</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service ramp</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service stairway</td>
<td>CD-D1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sewer</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amend 11 Sep 2010

ARCHIVED
Definitions

**Sill support bar** A bar or mechanism complying with EM6, E2/VM1 tests, and Clause B2 of the Building Code, and used to support the weight of aluminium window and door joinery that is installed over drained cavities.

**Simple house** A house that is described in Section 1 of this [SH/AS1] Acceptable Solution.

**Sitrwork** means work on a building site, including earthworks, preparatory to, or associated with the construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building.

**Skillion roof** A pitched roof where the ceiling lining is parallel and close to the roof cladding. The roof may be mono-pitch or may consist of more than one roof plane. These roofs may have rafters exposed below the ceiling.

**Smokecell** A space within a building which is enclosed by an envelope of smoke separations, or external walls, roofs, and floors.

**Smoke control door** A doorset with closefitting single or multi-leaves which are impermeable to the passage of smoke, fitted with smoke seals and installed within a smoke separation. The door, in the event of smoke, if not already closed, will close automatically and be held closed.

**Smoke developed index (SDI)** That index number for smoke developed when determined according to the standard test method for measuring the properties of lining materials.

**Smoke separation** Any vertical, horizontal or inclined building element with known smoke-stopping or smoke-leakage characteristics.

**Socket outlet** An accessory fixed to a wall or ceiling and designed to accept a plug that extends the electrical supply to an appliance by means of a flexible cable.

**Soffit bearer** See eaves bearer.

**Soffit plate** See ribbon board.

**Soft edge** A compatible soft edging seamed onto flashings to provide closure to profiled cladding.

**Soil fixture** A sanitary fixture constructed to receive solid and/or liquid excreted human waste. It includes bedpan disposal units, slop sinks, urinals, water closet pans, and water-flushed sanitary towel disposal units.

**Sound transmission class (STC)** A single number rating derived from measured values of transmission loss in accordance with classification ASTM E 413, Determination of Sound Transmission Class. It provides an estimate of the performance of a partition in certain common sound insulation situations.

**Spacing or spaced** The distance at which members are spaced, measured centre to centre.
**Definitions**

**Spans** See member span and support span.

**Specific design** Design and detailing for compliance with the Building Code, of a proposed part or parts of a building which are not shown in this Acceptable Solution.

**Specific design** Design and detailing of a proposed building or parts of a building, demonstrating compliance with the Building Code, that shall be provided to the building consent authority for assessment and approval as part of the building consent process. Buildings, or parts of buildings, requiring specific design are beyond the scope of the Simple House Acceptable Solution.

**Specified features**, for the purposes of Clause F6, means the following:

(a) building elements that may act as obstructions:

(b) safety features required under clauses of the Building Code other than Clause F6 (for example, handrails required under Clause D1):

(c) changes in direction:

(d) stairs and ramps:

(e) escape doors:

(f) entries to a safe place.

**Specified intended life** has the meaning given to it by section 113(3) of the Building Act 2004.

Section 113(3) states:

“(3) In subsection (2), specified intended life, in relation to a building, means the period of time, as stated in an application for a building consent or in the consent itself, for which the building is proposed to be used for its intended use.”

**Specified system**—

(a) means a system or feature that—

(i) is contained in a building; and

(ii) contributes to the proper functioning of the building (for example, an automatic sprinkler system);

And

(iii) is declared by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, to be a specified system for the purposes of this Act; and

(b) includes a cable car.

**Spread of flame index (SfI)** That index number for spread of flame which is determined according to the standard test method for measuring the properties of lining materials.

**Spillway** Weir, channel, conduit, tunnel, gate or other structure designed to permit discharges from the reservoir.
### Stability

In the context of fire protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a primary element, when subject to the standard test for fire resistance, has continued to carry its fire design load without failure.

**COMMENT:**
The fire design load should be as specified in B1/VM1.

### Stairway

A series of steps or stairs with or without landings, including all necessary handrails and giving access between two different levels.

### Stainless steel flashings

Stainless steel flashings shall be:

(a) minimum thickness of 0.45 mm, and
(b) Type 304 or 316 stainless steel in accordance with Table 1 of ISO/TS 15510.

### Stanchion

A connecting device, fixed into the structure of a building, that provides support for handrails, aerials and similar structures.

### Standards

Means specifications for building materials, methods, processes or practices that provide a basis for determining consistent and acceptable minimum levels of quality, performance, safety and reliability.

**COMMENT:**
Standards are developed by organisations that are recognised by the Government. In New Zealand, standards are developed by a trading arm of the Standards Council, a crown entity operating under the Standards Act 1988. In Australia, standards are developed by Standards Australia, which is recognised through a memorandum of understanding with the Commonwealth Government.

### Standard test

A test method which is recognised as being appropriate for the fire protection properties being assessed.

**COMMENT:**
A list of standard test methods is given in Appendix C of C/AS1.

### Standard year

For the purposes of determining natural lighting, the hours between 8 am and 5 pm each day with an allowance being made for daylight saving.

### Statutory authority

Means an authority or organisation that has the statutory power to classify or register land or buildings for any purpose.

### Stopend

A turn-up at the upper edge of profiled metal cladding, or at the end of gutters and some types of flashings.

**COMMENT:**
A stopend assists the control of moisture by ensuring any moisture reaching the edge of the roofing is deflected from further entry.

### Storage water heater

A water tank with an integral water heater for the storage of hot water.

### Storey

That portion of a building included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor immediately above, except the top storey shall be that portion of a building included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.
## Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Town gas</strong> A manufactured gas.</td>
<td>CD-G11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Toxic environment</strong> An environment that contains contaminants that can contaminate the water supply in concentrations greater than those included in the New Zealand Drinking Water Standard 1995.</td>
<td>CD-G12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Trade** means any trade, business, industry, profession, occupation, activity of commerce, or undertaking relating to—  
  (a) the supply or acquisition of goods or services; or  
  (b) the acquisition of household units or any interest in land. | BA04            |
| **Transverse flashing** A roof flashing that runs across the roof slope, at right angles to the roof cladding profile. | CD-E2           |
| **Trap** A chamber which is installed in the drain and incorporates features to intercept and retain floatable debris. | CD-E1           |
| **Trapezoidal** A type of profiled metal cladding with symmetrical or asymmetrical crests, with troughs between the crests. | CD-E2           |
| **Travel distance** The length of the escape route as a whole or the individual lengths of its parts, namely:  
  (a) Open paths  
  (b) Protected paths and  
  (c) Safe paths. | Code            |
| **Trickle ventilator** A controllable ventilation opening through the external envelope to the outside to provide background ventilation. | CD-G4           |
| **Trimmer** A member supporting the wall framing beneath, or over an opening in a non-loadbearing wall and carrying wind loads to the trimmer studs. | Simple House    |
| **Trimmer stud** A stud located on the side of an opening. | Simple House    |
| **Trough profile** A type of profiled metal cladding comprising vertical ribs with flat, or lightly profiled pans between the ribs. Also known as ribbed, secret fixed or tray profile. | CD-E2           |
**Definitions**

**U**

**Underlay** The material used behind a roof or wall cladding. Refer Wall underlay and Roof underlay.

**Unisex facilities** Facilities available for use by either sex.

**COMMENT:**

Unisex facilities may also be described as both gender facilities.

**Unitary authority** has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002.

Section 5(1) states:

“unitary authority” means a territorial authority that has the responsibilities, duties, and powers of a regional council conferred on it under—

(a) the provisions of any Act; or

(b) an Order in Council giving effect to a reorganisation scheme”

**Universal access** Where elements and spaces are accessible to and usable by people of all ages and abilities to the greatest extent possible.

**Unprotected area** in relation to an external wall of a building means:

(a) Any part of the external wall which has less than the required FRR. For example, a non fire rated window, door or other opening or sheet metal.

(b) Any part of the external wall which has combustible material more than 1.0mm thick attached to or applied to its external face, whether for cladding or any other purpose.

**uPVC flashings** uPVC flashings shall be a minimum of 0.75 mm thick and:

(a) comply with the requirements of the following Clauses of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2:

   ii) Clause 9.2 Impact resistance

   iii) Clause 9.3 Tensile strength

   iv) Clause 9.4 Colourfastness and impact resistance following ultraviolet light exposure.

(b) where exposed to the weather, shall also comply with Section 8 of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2.

(c) have a finish colour with a reflectance of 40% or more, when measured in accordance with ASTM C1549 or ASTM E903.

**V**

**Valley board** A board laid to support a valley gutter.

**Valley gutter** A gutter running down the valley formed by the intersection of two pitched roof surfaces.

**Valve vented storage water heater (unvented storage water heater)** A storage water heater in which the required venting to the atmosphere is controlled by a valve.

**Vapour barrier** Sheet material or coating having a low water-vapour transmission, and used to minimise water-vapour penetration in buildings. (Vapour barriers are sometimes referred to as damp-proof membranes.)
### Definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vent line</strong> A pipe or tube which conveys gas to a safe place outside the building from a gas pressure regulator relief valve.</td>
<td>CD-G10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vent pipe</strong> A pipe for the purpose of protecting water seals that at its upper end is either open to the atmosphere or fitted with an air admittance valve and that at its lower end is connected to a discharge pipe.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verification Method</strong> means a method by which compliance with the Building Code may be verified.</td>
<td>BA04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VSG</strong> Visual stress graded, refers to verified timber that is initially sorted visually in accordance with NZS 3603. See also MSG.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>W</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall</strong> refer External wall.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall area</strong>, in relation to a building, means the area (expressed in square metres) of internally-exposed external walls, including any door openings, of the building.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall bracing element</strong> A section of wall that performs a bracing function.</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall underlay</strong> An absorbent synthetic wrap used as part of the wall cladding system to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which may occasionally penetrate the wall cladding is directed back to the exterior of the building. The wall underlay shall have the properties in Table 23 of the Acceptable Solution E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture:</td>
<td>Simple House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) absorbency – no requirement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) water resistance of 20 mm or greater</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) shrinkage no more than 0.5%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall underlay</strong> A building paper, synthetic material or rigid sheathing used as part of the wall cladding system to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which occasionally penetrates the wall cladding is directed back to the exterior of the building.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waste pipe</strong> A discharge pipe that conveys the discharge from waste water fixtures to a gully trap.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waste water fixture</strong> A sanitary fixture or sanitary appliance used to receive wastes, and which is not a soil fixture.</td>
<td>CD-G13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water heater</strong> A device for heating water.</td>
<td>CD-B2, CD-G12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water main</strong> A water supply pipe that is under the control, or maintained by a network utility operator.</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waterproof and waterproofing</strong> The complete and total resistance of a building element to the ingress of any moisture.</td>
<td>CD-E2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water seal</strong> The depth of water that can be retained in a water trap.</td>
<td>CD-G2, CD-G13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Definition

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Water supply system</strong></th>
<th>Pipes, fittings and tanks used or intended to be used for the storage and reticulation of water from a <em>water main</em> or other water source to <em>sanitary fixtures</em>, <em>sanitary appliances</em> and fittings within a <em>building</em>.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water tank (vessel)</strong></td>
<td>A covered fixed container for storing hot or cold water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Water trap</strong></td>
<td>A fitting designed to retain a depth of water that prevents foul air and gases escaping from the <em>plumbing system</em> or <em>foul water drainage system</em> and entering a <em>building</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weathertightness and weathertight</strong></td>
<td>Terms used to describe the resistance of a <em>building</em> to the weather. <em>Weathertightness</em> is a state where water is prevented from entering and accumulating behind the <em>cladding</em> in amounts that can cause undue dampness or damage to the <em>building elements</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td>The term <em>weathertightness</em> is not necessarily the same as <em>waterproof</em>. However, a <em>weathertight building</em>, even under severe weather conditions, is expected to limit moisture ingress to inconsequential amounts, insufficient to cause undue dampness inside buildings and damage to building elements. Moisture that may occasionally enter is able to harmlessly escape or evaporate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weathertightness and weathertight</strong></td>
<td>Terms used to describe the resistance of a <em>building</em> to the weather.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wet area</strong></td>
<td>An area within a <em>building</em> supplied with water from a water supply system including bathrooms and showers, laundries, sanitary compartments and kitchen areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wetwall</strong></td>
<td>The exterior <em>cladding</em> on a wall with a <em>drained cavity</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wharenui</strong></td>
<td>A communal meeting house having a large open floor area used for both assembly and sleeping in the traditional Maori manner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wind zone</strong></td>
<td>Categorisation of wind force experienced on a particular site as determined in NZS 3604, Section 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMENT:</strong></td>
<td>Maximum ultimate limit state speeds are:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Low wind zone</strong> = wind speed of 32 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Medium wind zone</strong> = wind speed of 37 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>High wind zone</strong> = wind speed of 44 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Very high wind zone</strong> = wind speed of 50 m/s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Extra high wind zone</strong> = wind speed of 55 m/s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Specific design</em> is required for wind speeds greater than 55 m/s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wire dog</strong></td>
<td>Galvanised or stainless steel wire, D or Z shaped nail, spiked at each end. Used for fixing timber together to resist uplift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Working day</strong></td>
<td>means any day except—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, the Sovereign’s Birthday, Labour Day, and Waitangi Day; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) the day observed in the appropriate area as the anniversary of the province of which the area forms a part; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) a day in the period beginning on 20 December in any year and ending with the close of 10 January in the following year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

(Revised by Amendment 6)

This is a complete index for the New Zealand Building Code and Compliance Documents.

A

Access

see Access Routes, and Mechanical Installations for Access

Access chambers

see Maintenance access to drains

Access points

see Maintenance access to drains

Access to a facility

food and work areas............................................................. G1/AS1 3.2, Figure 10
lobbies........................................................................ G1/AS1 6.3.1
unisex facilities................................................................ G1/AS1 1.1.5 c)

Access Routes .............................................................. D1/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 1.4.1, 1.5.1, 1.5.3 a), 1.5.4, 1.5.5, 1.6.1, 1.7.1, 1.8.1, 2.0, 5.1.3, Figure 27

see also Accessible routes, Activity space, Doors, Escape routes, Handrails, Height clearances, Level access routes, Mechanical Installations for Access, A Person with a disability, Ramps, Stairs, Obstructions, Vehicles, Wheelchairs

access to buildings.............................................................. NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (a) (b), D1.3.3 (a) (b)
access within buildings ........................................... NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (c), D1.3.5

corridors ........................................................................ NZBC/D1.3.1 (c), Fe.3.1

level access routes.............................................................. D1/AS1 2.0

protection from falling ................................................................ D1/AS1 2.3

slip resistance ........................................................................ D1/AS1 2.1, Table 2

width.................................................................................. D1/AS1 2.2

location........................................................................ D1/AS1 1.1

principal entrance............................................................. D1/AS1 1.1

service and maintenance personnel................................. D1/AS1 11.0.3

Access to facilities .......................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 (c), G1.3.5; G3/AS1 Figure 1

Accessible accommodation units ................................. D1/AS1 9.0, 9.1, 9.1.1, 9.2.1, Table 9

see also A Person with a disability

bedrooms ........................................................................ D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)

dining areas ...................................................................... D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)

facilities .......................................................................... D1/AS1 9.2

kitchens ............................................................................ D1/AS1 9.2.1 b); G3/AS1 1.5.2, Figure 1

laundry ............................................................................... G2/AS1 1.2, Figure 2

sitting areas ........................................................................ D1/AS1 9.2.1 c)

toilets and baths ............................................................... D1/AS1 9.2.1 a)

Accessible routes ....................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3, D1.3.4; D1/AS1 1.1.1 to 1.1.3, 1.5.5 b), 2.1.1, 2.2.1, 7.0.1, 7.0.6, 11.0.1, Figure 27

access to performance areas ......................................... D1/AS1 8.2

Accessible units .................................................................. D1/AS1 1.1.3

Activity space .............................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (a), D1.3.4 (b), G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b), G5.3.3

Aged, homes for

see Old people’s homes

Air

see also Ventilation

airflow control ................................................................. NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0

changes ........................................................................... G4/VM1 1.0.1

ducts ............................................................................. C/AS1 6.9.5, 6.19.14, 6.20.20, 6.20.21

purity .............................................................................. G4/VM1 2.0
Air-handling systems ......................................................... G4/AS1 1.5.1 b)

Airborne and Impact Sound .................................................. G6
impact insulation class (IIC) ................................................ NZBC/G6.3.2
noise transmission between abutting occupancies ................... NZBC/G6.1, G6.2
sound insulation tests ........................................................ G6/VM1 2.0
sound transmission class (STC) ............................................ NZBC/G6.3.1; G6/VM1 1.0

Alerting devices ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2, 2.2.2 b)
audible ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2 c) f)
visual ............................................................... F7/AS1 2.1.2 c) f)

Alerting the Fire Service .................................................. F7/AS1 1.2.2, 1.2.7, 2.1.2 a), 2.2

Alternative solutions
accessible routes .......................................................... D1/AS1 11.0
bedding and back-filling drains ........................................ E1/AS1 3.9.8
laundry tubs ................................................................ G2/AS1 1.0.3
open vented storage water heaters ..................................... G12/AS1 6.9.1
solid waste storage ........................................................ G15/AS1 3.1
storage water heaters
seismic restraint ............................................................. G12/AS1 6.11.4
thermal resistance ......................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.5 (Comment)
unvented (valve vented) storage water heaters ................. G12/AS1 6.10.1, Figure 14
watertightness testing ..................................................... G12/AS1 7.5

Ancillary Buildings ......................................................... NZBC/A1 8.0, D1.2.1, D1.3.2 (h),
D1.3.3, G1.3.5, G8.2, G12.3.0

Apartments
see Housing, multi-unit dwellings

Appliances
see Sanitary appliances

Aprons ............................................................... C/AS1 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2

Artificial Light ............... G8; NZBC/H1.2 (c), H1.3.5; D1/AS1 1.5.4 (Comment), 1.8, 4.6;
adequate lighting ...................................................... NZBC/G8.2
energy consumption ..................................................... NZBC/G8.3
minimum illuminance .............................................. D1/AS1 4.6.1, Table 8, G8/AS1 1.0.1, Table 1
wattpage required ..................................................... D1/AS1 4.6.1, Table 8, G8/AS1 1.0.1, Table 1

Asbestos
see Hazardous Building Materials

Assembly care buildings
see Communal non-residential buildings

Assembly service buildings
see Communal non-residential buildings

Automatic extinguishers .................................................... G11/AS1 6.0
B

Backflow prevention
see Protection of water supplies


Banks.................................................................NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Barges......................................E2/AS1 4.6.1.5, 8.3.9, 9.6.8.2, 9.6.9.4, Figures 36, 92 and 97
see also Gutters, barges and fascias

Barriers.............................................................NZBC/F4.3.1, F4.3.4, F4.3.5, F5.3.2, F5.3.4; D1/AS1 1.7;
F4/AS1 1.0; F5/AS1 1.0

see also Access Routes, Handrails, Safety from Falling.

Timber barriers
accessible route ..........................................................D1/AS1 2.3.1
construction ..................................................................F4/AS1 1.2, Figures 1-4
construction site ..........................................................F4/AS1 1.2.6
fences ........................................................................F5/AS1 1.1, 1.1.2
around water hazards ..................................................F5/AS1 1.2
for specific hazards ......................................................F5/AS1 1.0.2
heights .......................................................................F4/AS1 1.1, Table 1
hoardings ....................................................................F5/AS1 1.1, 1.1.3, 1.1.5
viewing windows ..........................................................F5/AS1 1.1.4
parapet and rail barriers ............................................F4/AS1 1.2.3, Figure 5
safety enclosures for ladders ...................................D1/AS1 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
scaffolding ....................................................................F4/AS1 1.2.6
star barriers ..................................................................F4/AS1 Figure 4
toeboards .....................................................................F5/AS1 1.4
types of barriers ..........................................................F5/AS1 1.0.3

Basements...............................................C/AS1 3.3.2 ii), 3.71, 3.15.2, 4.5.15, 6.9.3, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19

see also Floors, basement floors

Basins...............................................................G1/AS1 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1; G13/AS1 3.3.2, 5.5.2, Table 2
Baths ........................................................................G1/AS1 Table 2; G13/AS1 Table 2
Bedrooms
see Habitable spaces

Bidets ...............................................................G1/AS1 2.4; G13/AS1 5.5.2, Table 2

Boarding Houses
see Communal residential buildings

Boundary
see Notional boundary, Relevant boundaries

Bridges
see Ancillary buildings

Building construction
non-solid construction ............................................H1/VM1 1.1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4
solid construction ....................................................H1/VM1 1.1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4
thermal envelope ....................................................H1/VM1 1.0, 1.1.2, H1/AS1 2.0, 2.1.3, 2.1.4
thermal resistance (R-value) .....................................H1/VM1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.4.1,
H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.3.1, 2.3.2

Building elements
NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.3, B2.3, E2.3.2, E2.3.3,
see also Floors, Ceilings, Roofs

elements in contact with the ground..................................................NZBC/E2.3.3

primary elements .............................................................................C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 a), c), 5.6.1 a),

5.7.1, 5.7.4, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.9, 6.14.3, 7.1.2 b),

7.8.10 b), 7.9.4, 7.9.5 a), 7.10.3, 7.10.4, C7.11

requiring noise control ......................................................................G6/AS1 1.0.2, Figure 1

secondary elements ...........................................................................C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 b), 5.6.1 a),

5.7.1, 5.7.8, 7.1.2 b), 7.10.3, C7.11

unrated primary ................................................................................C/AS1 5.9.4, Figure 5.2

Building height ................................................................................C/AS1 5.7.6 c), 7.11.3 a), 7.11.4

Building performance index

see Energy efficiency provisions

Building site ....................................................................................E1/VM1 3.2.2, 4.1.10, E1/AS1 1.0.1

evaluation .........................................................................................E1/VM1 1.0.3

Buildings

air-supported structures .....................................................................C/AS1 6.20.18

atriums ...............................................................................................C/AS1 6.22

building elements ............................................................................B1/VM4 2.0.3

building separation ............................................................................NZBC/B1.3.3 (o)
car parking .......................................................................................C/AS1 6.8.4, 6.10.3 to 6.10.6, 7.8.2, 7.9.16, Figure 6.2
carports .............................................................................................C/AS1 7.8.10 (Comment)
commercial .......................................................................................H1/VM1 1.0, 1.0.2, H1/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 6.1.1

communal non-residential ...............................................................H1/VM1 1.0, H1/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.4, 6.1.1

communal residential ........................................................................H1/VM1 1.0, H1/AS1 1.0.1

dwellings

attached and multi-unit .................................................................C/AS1 1.3.5, 1.3.6

detached ..........................................................................................C/AS1 1.3.3

earth buildings ...............................................................................B1/VM1 8.0, B1/AS1 4.0, E2/AS2 1.0

education .........................................................................................C/AS1 3.8.4, 6.20.7

grandstands .....................................................................................C/AS1 3.16.7

hospitals ...........................................................................................C/AS1 6.6.6

hotels, motels and accommodation ............................................C/AS1 2.2.3

housing ............................................................................................H1/VM1 1.0, 1.1, H1/AS1 1.0, 2.0

detached dwellings .........................................................................H1/VM1 1.1.3, 1.2.1

group dwellings ..............................................................................H1/VM1 1.1.3

multi-unit dwellings .......................................................................H1/VM1 1.1.3, 1.2.1, H1/AS1 2.1.2

wharekura .......................................................................................H1/VM1 1.1.3

industrial ..........................................................................................H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.0.2, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 1.0.3

intended life

see Durability

intended use

see Intended use

large buildings .................................................................................H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.3, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 2.2.1, 4.0.1

masonry buildings ..........................................................................B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.1.1

membrane structures ......................................................................NZBC/C4.1.1; C/AS1 6.20.17 to 6.20.19, C3.1.1

minimum floor level .......................................................................E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2

multi-storey buildings .....................................................................C/AS1 2.2.5, 6.12.2

open air auditoriums ........................................................................C/AS1 3.16.5

open sided buildings ........................................................................C/AS1 7.8.8 to 7.8.10, Figure 7.10

purpose group classification .......................................................C/AS1 2.2, Table 2.1

reference buildings ..........................................................................H1/VM1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4

remaining occupied during fire ......................................................C/AS1 5.6.9

residential community care ...........................................................C/AS1 2.4

seasonal use buildings ...................................................................F7/AS1 1.1.2 c)
single-floor buildings .....................................................................F7/AS1 1.1.2 a) b)
## Index

### Buildings (continued)

- **siteworks**
  - see Structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amend 11</th>
<th>Sep 2010</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>small buildings</td>
<td>H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.1.1, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 2.1, 4.0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theatres</td>
<td>C/AS1 2.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three-floor buildings</td>
<td>F7/AS1 1.1.2 b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amend 12</th>
<th>Oct 2011</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timber framed buildings</td>
<td>B1/AS1 3.0, B1/AS3 1.1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amend 11</th>
<th>Sep 2010</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>two-floor buildings</td>
<td>C/AS1 3.3.2 h, 3.4.2 e, 6.7.9, H1/VM1 1.1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wharenui</td>
<td>C/AS1 6.7.9, H1/VM1 1.1.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
C

Call points..................................................F7/AS1 1.1.4

Camping grounds...................NZBC/G2.2, G2.3.4; G1/AS1 3.4.2, Tables 1 to 3; G2/AS1 Table 1
see also Communal residential buildings

Car park ventilation .......................................................G4/AS1 1.5.4

Car parking buildings see Commercial buildings, Vehicles

Carports
see Outbuildings

Catchment
characteristics ..............................................E1/VM1 1.0.2 a), 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.3, 4.2.1

Ceilings...............................................................NZBC/G6.3.1, G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3

floor/ceiling assemblies ...........................................G6/AS1 Figure 3

Centres for people with disabilities
see Communal non-residential buildings

Child care centres
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential Buildings

Children........................................NZBC/D1.3.3 (h), F4.3.3, F4.3.4 (f), F4.3.5 (a), F5.2 (d), F5.3.3, G15.3.2 (g); D1/AS1 4.1.8 a);
F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1-4; F5/AS1 1.0.2

See also Early childhood centres

Chimneys .....................B1/AS1 1.2, 8.0, B1/AS3 2.1; C/AS1 9.5, Figure 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3

bracing units .....................................................B1/AS3 1.9, 1.9.3, 1.9.6, Table 2

brick chimneys ..............................................B1/AS3 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) b), 1.2.1 a), 1.6.2 a),
1.7.1, 1.7.6, 1.8.1, 1.8.5 a), Figures 2 to 4 and 7, Table 1

cantilever height .....................................................B1/AS3 1.1.2

chimney bases .....................................................B1/AS3 1.1.3 a), 1.6.1, 1.9.4 b)

chimney breasts ...................................................B1/AS3 1.5, Table 1

chimney depth .....................................................B1/AS3 1.1.3

chimney height ....................................................B1/AS3 1.1.2

chimney liners .....................................................B1/AS3 1.1.4

chimney lintels .....................................................B1/AS3 Table 1

chimney materials ..............................................B1/AS3 1.8

chimney stacks...............................................B1/AS3 1.1.2, 1.6.1

chimney wall thickness ........................................B1/AS3 1.2, 1.2.1

chimney width ....................................................B1/AS3 1.1.3

crushed stone chimneys ......................................B1/AS3 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) cl), 1.2.1 bl cl), 1.6.2 a) b),
1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.2, 1.8.5 bl), Figures 4 and 5, Table 1

crushed stone masonry .......................................B1/AS3 1.8.4

floor brackets ....................................................B1/AS3 1.7.1, 1.7.3 to 1.7.5, 1.9.4 b) cl), Figure 6
foundations .......................................................B1/AS3 1.1.2, 1.1.3 a), 1.3, 1.3.1,
1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.7.4, 1.7.5, 1.8.4, Figure 1

foundation slabs ..................................................B1/AS3 1.1.2, 1.3.2, 1.7.4, 1.7.5

hearth slabs .......................................................B1/AS3 1.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3
packers ...............................................................B1/AS3 1.7.2, 1.7.6 c)

precast pumice concrete chimneys .........................B1/AS3 1.1.1 bl, 1.1.3 a) cl),
1.2.1 cl), 1.6.2 bl), 1.7.1.1.7.13, 1.8.3,
1.8.5 cl), Figures 5 and 7, Table 1

compressive strength ............................................B1/AS3 1.8.3 c)

construction of ....................................................B1/AS3 1.8.3

restraint ..............................................................B1/AS3 1.7, 1.7.1, 1.7.13, Figures 6 and 7
roof brackets .....................................................B1/AS3 1.7.1, 1.7.3, 1.7.4, Figure 6
roof ties ...............................................................B1/AS3 1.7.5
structural diaphragms ..........................................B1/AS3 1.9.5
wall ties ..............................................................B1/AS3 1.7.5, 1.7.7, 1.7.8

closely spaced wall ties ........................................B1/AS3 1.7.5, 1.9.4 c)
Index

Churches
see Communal non-residential buildings

Cinemas
see also Communal non-residential buildings

Classified uses
NZBC/A1

Cleaners' sinks
G13/AS1 Table 2

Clubrooms
see Communal non-residential buildings

Cold water expansion valves (explosion control valves)
NZBC/A1 5.0, E3.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.2 (a), G3.3.2 (b), G3.3.6, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4, H1.2 (c); G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0

Colleges
see Communal non-residential buildings

Commercial buildings
NZBC/A1 4.0, E3.3.2, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G5.3.5, G8.2, G9.3.4, H1.2 (a), H1/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4

Communal non-residential buildings
NZBC/A1 4.0, E3.2.2, E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G5.3.5, G8.2, G9.3.4, H1.2 (c); H1/AS1 1.0.1

Communal residential buildings
NZBC/A1 3.0, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4, D1/AS1 9.0, 9.1.1, H1/AS1 1.0.1

Community care buildings
see Communal residential buildings

Community service buildings
see Commercial buildings

Concealed spaces
C/AS1 6.18.1, 6.18.10

Cavity barriers
C/AS1 6.18.1, 6.18.4 to 6.18.6

Ceiling space firecells
C/AS1 6.12.8

Ceiling space restrictions
C/AS1 6.19.7 to 6.18.10

In walls and floors
C/AS1 6.18.4

Within firecells
C/AS1 6.18.2, 6.18.3, Figure 6.10

see also External Moisture, Internal Moisture

Concealed works
B1/VM4 A1.2.1 b)

Concrete
B2/AS1 3.1

see also Design, concrete

Condensation
see Internal Moisture
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction moisture</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximum acceptable moisture contents</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>measuring moisture content</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concrete floors</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timber</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moisture in materials</td>
<td>E2/AS1 10.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction site barriers</td>
<td>F4/AS1 1.2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction and Demolition Hazards</td>
<td>F5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>areas accessible to the public</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barriers</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.3.2, F5.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demolition sites</td>
<td>F5/AS1 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entry of children</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.2 (d), F5.3.3, F5/AS1 1.0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falling objects</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.2 (a) (b), F5.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lifting equipment</td>
<td>NZBC/F5.3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contaminants</td>
<td>G14/VM1 1.6, Table 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Hazardous agents on site, contaminants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control panel</td>
<td>F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 2.2.2 b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corridors</td>
<td>C/AS1 6.13.1, Figure 6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see also Access Routes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrosives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Structure, loads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross connections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Protection of water supplies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclic loads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see Structure, loads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**D**

Dampness

*see* External Moisture, Internal Moisture

Dams

*see* Ancillary buildings

Dangerous goods

*see also* Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes

Day care institution

*see* Early childhood centres, Communal non-residential buildings

Dead ends

*see* Escape routes

-Amend 12 Oct 2011-

Decks and pergolas................................................................. E2/AS1 7.0

*see also* Membrane roofs and decks

*see also* Enclosed Balustrades

attachment to building structure .................................. E2/AS1 7.2

pergolas ................................................................................. E2/AS1 7.2.2, Figure 15

slatted timber decks to walls ......................................... E2/AS1 7.2.1, Figure 15

cantilevered decks.............................................................. E2/AS1 7.2.1.1, Figure 16

level thresholds ................................................................ E2/AS1 7.3, Figures 17A and 17B

cantilevered decks .............................................................. E2/AS1 7.3.1

removable surfaces......................................................... E2/AS1 7.3.1.1, Figure 16

timber removable surface .............................................. E2/AS1 7.3.1.2

ground floor level access ................................................ E2/AS1 7.3.2, Figure 17B

concrete slab ............................................................................ E2/AS1 Paragraph 7.3.2.1, Figure 17B

timber floor ............................................................................. E2/AS1 Paragraph 7.3.2.2, Figure 17B

-Amend 12 Oct 2011-

thresholds for decks.............................................................. E2/AS1 7.1, Figure 14

cantilevered decks .............................................................. E2/AS1 7.1.2

slatted decks .............................................................................. E2/AS1 7.1.1, Figure 14

-Deflections-  

*see* Structure

Demolition

*see* Construction and Demolition Hazards

Dental surgeries ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)

*see also* Commercial buildings

-Amend 11 Sep 2010-

Design

aluminium ................................................................. B1/VM1 7.0, B1/AS1 4.0

cement ................................................................. B1/VM1 7.0

cement masonry .......................................................... B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS3 1.3.3

drains

*see Drains

earth building ............................................................... B1/VM1 8.0, B1/AS1 4.0

foundations

*see Foundations

-Amend 12 Oct 2011-

loadings ................................................................. B1/VM1 2.0

earthquake ................................................................. B1/VM1 1.0, 2.0, B1/AS1 1.4, B1/AS3 1.9, Table 2

limit state .............................................................................. B1/VM1 2.0, 7.1

-Amend 11 Sep 2010-

siteworks ................................................................. B1/VM1 10.0

steel ................................................................. B1/VM1 5.0

strength reduction factor ........................................ B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4

structural design action standards ................................ B1/VM1 2.0

-Amend 12 Oct 2011-

timber ................................................................. B1/VM1 6.0, B1/AS1 3.0

-Amend 11 Sep 2010-

windows

*see* Windows
Design loads
see Structure, loads

Detached dwellings
see Housing

Differential movement
see Structure, loads

Disabled persons
see a Person with a disability

Discharge pipes
G3/AS1 1.1.5; G13/AS1 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.6, 5.1.1, 5.5, 5.7.3,
Figures 6 and 11, Table 4
branch discharge pipes
G13/AS1 Figure 7
diameters
G13/AS1 3.3.2, 4.3, 6.3, Table 6, G13/AS2 3.6, 4.2
fixture discharge pipes
G13/AS1 Figures 7 and 8, Tables 2 and 4
gradient
G13/AS1 4.4, 5.4, G13/AS2 3.5, Table 2
waste pipes
combined waste pipes
G13/AS1 Figure 5
developed lengths
G13/AS1 Figures 5, 6 and 8

Discharge stacks
G13/AS1 4.2.2 a), 4.5.1 b), 4.7, 5.3.1, 5.6, Figures 7 to 9, Tables 3, 4 and 6
see also Discharge pipes, Pipes

Discharge stack vents
G13/AS1 4.7.1 b), 5.2.1 b), 5.3.1, 5.6.1, 5.6.3 b),
Figures 7 and 8, Table 6, G13/AS2 4.1.5, Figure 5

Discharge units
G13/AS1 Table 2, G13/AS2 Table 2

Dishwashing machine
G13/AS1 3.3.2 a) e), Table 2

Domestic buildings
see Housing

Doors
see also Windows and doors
NZBC/D1.3.4 (f), D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (n), D1.3.4 (f), D2.3.5 (c),
F5.3.2 (d); C/AS1 3.9.1, 3.11.6, 6.19.4; D1/AS1 7.0.7,
Figure 27;
acceptable obstructions
C/AS1 3.3.6
accessible doors
D1/AS1 7.0.3 to 7.0.5
accessible escape routes
C/AS1 3.3.7
automatic sliding doors
C/AS1 3.17.7
closers and latching
C/AS1 3.17.1
degree and width of opening
C/AS1 3.17.4, 3.17.5
delayed action unlocking devices
C/AS1 3.17.11
direction of opening
C/AS1 3.17.3, 3.17.4
door swings
C/AS1 3.4.5 b), 3.13.2, 3.17.5 d) e)
fire doors
C/AS1 3.3.1 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.11.9, 3.17.9, 3.17.13, 6.19.2 a),
C7.1, Figures 3.29 to 3.31, Table 6.1;
frameless glass doors
D1/AS1 7.0.7
glazing
C/AS1 5.8.10, 5.8.11, D1/AS1 7.0.4, Figure 28
handles
D1/AS1 7.0.5
hold-open devices
C/AS1 3.17.1 b), 3.17.9, F7/AS1 1.3.6, 1.5.2
lift landing doors
C/AS1 6.16.5 b), 6.19.13, Table 6.1
lobby doors
D1/AS1 7.0.1
locking devices
C/AS1 3.17.2, 3.18.6
markings
C/AS1 6.19.6, 6.19.7
panic bolts
C/AS1 3.17.14
revolving doors, automatic doors and
access control systems
C/AS1 3.17.7, 3.17.8,
Figure 3.26; D1/AS1 7.0.6, Figure 29
signs
C/AS1 3.17.9, 3.17.12, 6.9.11, 6.19.2 b), C7.1,
Figures 3.27, 3.28 and 6.1, Table 6.1

smoke control doors
C/AS1 3.17.9, 3.17.12, 6.9.11, 6.19.2 b), C7.1,
Doors (continued)

subdividing escape routes ......................................................................... C/AS1 3.17

turnstiles ........................................................................................................ D1/AS1 7.0.6

visibility ......................................................................................................... D1/AS1 7.0.4

vision panels ................................................................................................. C/AS1 3.17.6, 5.8.10

width ............................................................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.3

Downlights .................................................................................................. C/AS1 9.4

Downpipes ................................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.4.2 a) b) l, 3.7.8, 4.0.5.11

installation .................................................................................................. E1/AS1 4.3

materials ...................................................................................................... E1/AS1 4.1, Table 4

sizing ........................................................................................................... E1/AS1 4.2, Table 5

Drainage system .......................................................................................... G13/AS1 5.1.2, 5.5.2, 5.7.3, 5.7.4 b), G13/AS2 1.0.2, 3.1.1, 3.3.2, 4.1.1, 5.10.1

Drains ............................................................................................................ G13/AS1 3.3, 3.7.3 a), B1/VM1 11.0.

B1/AS1 6.0, G13/AS1 4.2.2 d), G13/AS2 1.0

access points .............................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, 3.7.8

access chambers........... E1/VM1 5.0.1, E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12

inspection chambers................................................................. E1/AS1 3.7.1, E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11

inspection points .......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b

rodding points................................................................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10

alignment..................................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.3, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5

see also Drain, layout

bedding and backfilling ............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.2, Figure 13; G13/AS2 Figure 7

alternative solutions ......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.9.6

materials ...................................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.9.5; G13/AS2 Table 1

placing and compacting ............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.6; G13/AS2 5.5

proximity to buildings .............................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.7, Figure 14;

trench slope .................................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.3

trench width .................................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.9.4

bends ............................................................................................................ G13/AS2 3.1

bubble-up chamber system ......................................................................... E1/AS1 3.4.2, Figures 6 and 7

connections ................................................................................................ G13/AS2 3.2, Figure 11

construction ................................................................................................ G13/AS2 5.2, Figure 7

diameter

see Drains, sizing

disused drains ............................................................................................. G13/AS2 5.10

downstream water systems .......................................................................... E1/VM1 4.3

drain vent pipes .......................................................................................... G13/AS2 Figure 3, Table 3

drains under buildings ................................................................................ E1/AS1 3.7.6 to 3.7.8

gradient ................................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.3.1, 3.7.3 b); G13/AS1 Table 5, G13/AS2 3.5, Table 2

minimum gradient .................................................................................. E1/AS1 3.4, Table 2

installation .................................................................................................. G13/AS2 5.0, 5.5

joints ............................................................................................................ E1/AS1 3.5, Table 3; G13/AS2 5.1

junctions ..................................................................................................... G13/AS2 3.2

layout ........................................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.3.1, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5

leakage tests ............................................................................................... E1/VM1 8.0, E1/AS1 3.8

high pressure air test ........................................................................................ E1/VM1 8.3

low pressure air test ...................................................................................... E1/VM1 8.2

water test ..................................................................................................... E1/VM1 8.1

maintenance access

see Maintenance access to drains

materials...................................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.1, Table 1; G13/AS2 2.0, Table 1

open water, upstream of site ........................................................................ E1/VM1 4.2

pipe water, upstream of site ......................................................................... E1/VM1 4.1

quantity ....................................................................................................... E1/VM1 4.1.10

tailwater depth ....................................................................................... E1/VM1 4.1.6, 4.1.7

proximity to buildings ................................................................................ G13/AS2 5.6, Figure 8

secondary flow ........................................................................................... E1/VM1 4.0, 4.1.11 E1/AS1 1.0.1 d)

downstream drainage .................................................................................. E1/VM1 4.3

headwater depth ............ E1/VM1 4.1.4, 4.1.5, 4.1.8, 4.1.9, Figures 5 to 7, 10 and 11
Drains (continued)

- site – outfall protection ................................................................. E1/VM1 7.0
- sizing ......................................................................................... E1/VM1 3.0, E1/AS1 3.2, Figure 3; G13/AS2 3.6, Table 2
- energy losses ............................................................................... E1/VM1 5.0
- hydraulic design of drains ......................................................... E1/VM1 1.0.4, 3.2, Figures 6 and 7
- air entrainment ........................................................................... E1/VM1 3.2.4
- headwater depth ......................................................................... E1/VM1 3.2.2, Figure 5 a)
- minimum size .............................................................................. E1/VM1 3.1
- minimum velocity ........................................................................ E1/VM1 6.0
- pipe size decrease ....................................................................... E1/VM1 5.0.2
- soak pits ....................................................................................... E1/VM1 9.0, Figure 13
- sumps .......................................................................................... E1/AS1 3.6.1, 3.6.2, Figures 8 and 9
- surface water inlets ..................................................................... E1/AS1 3.6
- under buildings ............................................................................ E1/VM1 4.1, 4.2
- upstream water systems ............................................................. G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
- watertightness ............................................................................. G13/AS2 6.1.1

Draught diverters ........................................................................ G13/AS1 2.3.2

Drinking fountains ........................................................................ G13/AS1 Table 2

Durability .................................................................................... B2; B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
- code compliance certificate ........................................................ NZBC/B2.3
- ease of access and replacement .................................................. B2/AS1 1.2.1
- evaluation ................................................................................... B2/VM1 1.0, B2/AS1 1.2, Figure 1
- examples of requirement .............................................................. B2/AS1 1.3.1, Table 1
- generic materials ......................................................................... B2/AS1 3.0
- in service history ......................................................................... B2/VBM 1.1
- laboratory testing ....................................................................... B2/VBM 1.2
- similar materials .......................................................................... B2/VBM 1.3
- intended life ................................................................................ NZBC/B1.3.1, B2.1, B2.3
  - 5 year durability ....................................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
  - 15 year durability ....................................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
  - 50 year durability ....................................................................... B2/AS1 Table 1
- maintenance ................................................................................ B2/AS1 2.0
- normal ........................................................................................ B2/AS1 2.1
- scheduled ................................................................................... B2/AS1 2.2
- specified intended life ................................................................. NZBC/B2.3
- timber ......................................................................................... B2/AS1 3.2

Dynamic loads
- see Structure, loads
E

Early childhood centres........................................NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a),
G5.3.1, G5.3.2, G7.2, G12.3.4; G2/AS1 Table 1;
G3/AS1 1.0.1; G5/AS1 1.0.3

see also Communal non-residential buildings

Earth buildings .............................................................................. B2/AS1 3.4, E2/AS2 1.0

Earth pressure

see Structure, loads

Earth retaining structures ......................................................... B1/VM4 2.0.3

Earthquakes

see Structure, loads

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Ease of access and replacement ...................................................... B2/AS1 1.2.1

Effluents ......................................................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2.1 f)

Amend 12
Oct 2011

EIFS........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9

battens ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.5

coating ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.6

decorative mouldings .................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.6.4

finish coats .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.6.3

reinforcing .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.6.1

reinforcing base coat .................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.6.2

EIFS/floor slab junction ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.7, Figure 125

general ........................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.2

installation .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.4, Table 23

fixing blocks ................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.4.4

fixings ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.1, Table 24

joints ............................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.4.2

movement control joints ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.4.3, Figure 124

Amend 12
Oct 2011

limitations .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.1

materials ..................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.3

fibreglass reinforcing mesh ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.3.2

polystyrene sheet ....................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.3.1

parapets and enclosed balustrades ................................................ E2/AS1 9.9.10

EIFS topped enclosed balustrades ................................................. E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figure 129

flush-finished balustrade top ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.10.1, Figures 129 and 130

metal cappings .......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figures 12, 13 and 130

pipes and service penetrations.................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.8, Figure 126

windows and doors ................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.9, Figures 17c, 127 and 128

Electrical codes of practice ...................................................... G9/VM1 1.0.1, G9/AS1 1.0.1

Electricity ...................................................................................... G9

electrical installations ......................................................... NZBC/G9.1, G9.2, G9.3.1 to G9.3.3; G9/VM1 1.0

domestic cooking and refrigeration ........................................ G3/AS1 1.4.1

laundries .................................................................................... G2/AS1 1.1.2

electromechanical stress .......................................................... NZBC/G9.3.1 (d)

essential services ...................................................................... NZBC/G9.3.2

external supply system ............................................................. NZBC/G9.3.3

a person with a disability ......................................................... NZBC/G9.3.4

light switches ........................................................................... G9/AS1 2.0.1 a) b)

socket outlets ........................................................................... G9/AS1 2.0.1 c)

temperature ............................................................................... NZBC/G9.3.1 (c) (d)

Emergency lighting

see Lighting for Emergency
Enclosed balustrades.................................................. E2/AS1 7.4, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10, Figures 101 and 102, Table 3
balustrade-to-deck floor junction.......................................................... E2/AS1 7.4.3, Figures 18 and 62
balustrade-to-wall junctions.................................................. E2/AS1 7.4.2, Figures 11-12
deck drainage............................................................................. E2/AS1 7.4.1
EIFS-topped ............................................................................... E2/AS1 9.9.10, Figure 129
flush-finished topped balustrades .................................................. E2/AS1 9.7.7.1, Figure 117
metal cappings ........................................................................ E2/AS1 7.4.4, Table 7, Figure 5
stanchions .................................................................................. E2/AS1 7.4.5, Figure 19

Enclosing rectangles............................................................... C/AS1 7.3.6, 7.5, 7.6
building on sloping sites and
buildings of irregular height .................................................. C/AS1 7.5.9, 7.5.10, Figure 7.7
exceptions for SH, SR and SA buildings ........................................ C/AS1 7.5.7, 7.5.8, Figure 7.7
Method 2..................................................................................... C/AS1 7.3.4 a), 7.3.6 to 7.3.8,
7.3.12, 7.5, Figures 7.5 to 7.7, Table 7.2
Method 3..................................................................................... C/AS1 7.3.4 b), 7.5.12, 7.6, Figure 7.8
Method 4..................................................................................... C/AS1 7.3.4 c), 7.3.9, 7.7, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4

Energy cut-offs ............................................................................ G12/AS1 6.4.1 c), 6.5.2

Energy Efficiency
building performance index (BPI) ............................................ NZBC/H1.3.2; H1/VM1 1.2
heat gain .................................................................................... NZBC/H1.3.3 (d) (f); H1/AS1 4.0
heat loss ..................................................................................... NZBC/H1.3.4
heating ....................................................................................... NZBC/H1.3.2
indoor temperature and humidity ............................................... NZBC/H1.2 (a), H1.3.1

Energy efficiency provisions
airflow control ........................................................................... H1/AS1 3.0
artificial lighting ....................................................................... H1/VM1 1.3.1, H1/AS1 1.0.4, 6.1.1
building performance index ........................................................ H1/VM1 1.2, 1.2.1
hot water systems ....................................................................... H1/AS1 5.0.1
internal moisture ....................................................................... H1/VM1 1.2.1, H1/AS1 2.1.4
solar heat gain ........................................................................... H1/AS1 4.0

Entries
principal ...................................................................................... D1/AS1 1.1.1

Environment
see Interior Environment

Escalators
see Mechanical Installations for Access

Escape height ................................................................. C/AS1 2.2.9 a), 3.3.4, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6,3.15.7 a), 3.18.1, 4.5.10 b), 5.3.3 c), 7.10.3 Comment
7.9.10, Figure 3.20, Table 4.1
Escape routes .............................................................. NZBC/F6.2, F6.3.2, F6.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1 3.1 to 3.4, 3.6.1,
3.7.1, 3.9.12 to 3.9.14, 3.11.4, 3.17.3, 3.17.5, 4.5.7,
Figures 3.1 to 3.5, Tables 3.1 and 3.2,
D1/AS1 1.1.5, F8/AS1 3.0

see also Means of Escape
accessible ................................................................................ C/AS1 3.3.7, 3.17.5 a)
doors subdividing escape routes ................................................ C/AS1 3.17
exitways .................................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 a), 3.11, 3.12, 6.9.1, 6.16.7, A2.1.1 Type 16,
Figures 3.3 and 3.20, Tables 2.1, 6.1 to 6.3
external exitways ........................................................................ C/AS1 3.16.4, 5.6.3 c), 7.9.1, 7.9.3
lighting ...................................................................................... C/AS1 3.19.1
lighting for emergency
see Fire safety precautions
pressurisation
see Fire safety precautions
Escape routes; exitways (continued)

- split level exitways ................................................................. C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
- ventilation of enclosed exitways .............................................. C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
- external.................................................................................. C/AS1 3.14
- handrails .............................................................................. C/AS1 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c)
- height and width of escape routes .......................................... C/AS1 3.3
- height..................................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.1
- width..................................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 to 3.3.5, 3.9.4 to 3.9.6, 3.9.12 e), 3.17.5,
  Figures 3.3, 3.4 and 3.8, Tables 3.2 and 3.4
- length of escape routes ......................................................... C/AS1 3.4, 3.5, 3.11.7, 6.13.1, 6.20.4 e), 7.2.1 b), 7.7.1,
  Figures 3.7, 3.9 and 3.10, Table 3.3
- measurement of travel distance ............................................. C/AS1 Appendix D
- number of escape routes ....................................................... C/AS1 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1
- obstructions ........................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.6, 3.4.2 c), 3.17.5 a), 3.18.3
- access control systems .......................................................... C/AS1 3.17.7
- chains...................................................................................... C/AS1 3.3.8
- crowd control barriers .......................................................... C/AS1 3.3.8
- sliding bars ............................................................................ C/AS1 3.3.8
- turnstiles ................................................................................ C/AS1 3.3.6
- open paths ............................................................................ C/AS1 2.2.8, 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.1.5, 3.3.2 f),
  3.3.7, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.8, 3.9, 3.17.3 a),
  3.17.5 a), A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.1, 3.7,
  3.9, 3.12 and 3.16, Table 3.3
- dead end open paths ............................................................... C/AS1 3.1
- increases in open path lengths .............................................. C/AS1 3.5
- intermediate floors ............................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 f), 3.4.1 a), 3.4.6, 3.9.13, Figure 3.9
- length ..................................................................................... C/AS1 1.3.4 Step 2, 2.2.8, 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.4, 3.4.6 to 3.4.8,
  3.5, 3.15.1, Figures 3.7 and 3.9, Table 3.3
- number of open paths ........................................................... C/AS1 3.8.1
- ramps ...................................................................................... C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.9.2, 3.14.7
- separation of open paths ...................................................... C/AS1 3.8.3, Figure 3.12
- size of open paths ................................................................. C/AS1 3.8.1
- sloping floors and ceilings ................................................... C/AS1 3.4.8 a)
- aisles ...................................................................................... C/AS1 3.9.4 to 3.9.9, Figure 3.15
- exception for education buildings ........................................ C/AS1 3.8.4
- fixed seating ......................................................................... C/AS1 3.9.3, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Table 3.4
- ladders ................................................................................... C/AS1 3.10.2
- long corridors ....................................................................... C/AS1 6.13, Figure 6.5
- loose seating ......................................................................... C/AS1 3.9.10, 3.9.11
- separate tenancies ............................................................... C/AS1 3.9.1
- subdivision ............................................................................ C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- unenclosed stairs ................................................................. C/AS1 3.9.14
- protected paths ................................................................. C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.7.1 a), 3.9.12, 3.9.13, 3.11.1, 3.11.2,
  3.15.3 b), 3.16.3, 6.9.1, 6.9.6 a), 6.10.4 a),
  6.11.3 b), Figures 3.1, 3.7, 3.8, 3.11, 3.19,
  3.28 and 3.30, Tables 2.1 and 6.1
- floor area .............................................................................. C/AS1 3.4.3, 3.4.5
- length ..................................................................................... C/AS1 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.4, 6.13.1 a), Table 3.3
- subdivision ............................................................................ C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- safe paths ............................................................................. C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.4.1 b), 3.7.1, 3.9.14, 3.11.4 to 3.11.6, 3.11.9,
  3.14.1, 3.15.3 b), 3.15.6, 3.15.8 a), 3.16.1, 3.16.6, 3.16.8,
  3.16.9, 6.9.2 to 6.9.4, 6.10.4 a), 6.22.2 d), 7.2.1 b), 7.7.1,
  A2.1.1 Type 13 Type 19, Figures 3.1, 3.8, 3.16, 3.19, 3.21,
  3.22, 3.24, 3.29 to 3.31 and 5.1, Tables 2.1, 6.1 and 7.4
- glazing .................................................................................... C/AS1 5.8, Figure 5.1
- horizontal safe paths ......................................................... C/AS1 3.11.6 a), 3.11.7, 3.11.8, 3.17.9 b), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.8
- length restrictions ............................................................. C/AS1 3.11.7, 3.15.5 c)
- permitted activities .............................................................. C/AS1 3.12.2
- subdivision ............................................................................ C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
- vertical safe paths ........................................................... C/AS1 3.11.6 b), 3.11.7, 3.12.3, 3.13.13, 3.16.3,
  3.17.9 b), 3.17.12 a), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.7, 6.9.11,
  A2.1.1 Type 14, Figure 6.1
Escape routes (continued)

signs ................................................................. C/AS1 3.20
single escape routes ........................................ C/AS1 3.15
active purpose groups .......................................... C/AS1 3.15.3, 3.15.4
basements .......................................................... C/AS1 3.15.2, Figure 3.19
bridges .................................................................. C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.23
external balconies .................................................. C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.22
external stairways ................................................... C/AS1 3.15.7
intermediate floors ................................................... C/AS1 6.22.2 c
internal stairs .......................................................... C/AS1 3.15.6, Figure 3.21
sleeping purpose groups ......................................... C/AS1 3.15.5, Figure 3.21
split level exitways ................................................... C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
stairs ...................................................................... C/AS1 3.15.6, 3.15.7, Figures 3.21 to 3.23
surface finishes .................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 6.2

Equipotential bonding .............................................. G12/AS1 9.0
earth bonding conductors ......................................... G12/AS1 9.3
installation of conductors ........................................ G12/AS1 9.2
metallic sanitary fixtures ........................................ G12/AS1 9.2.2, Figure 20
metallic water supply pipes ..................................... G12/AS1 9.2.1, Figure 19

Escape through adjacent firecell ............................... C/AS1 3.9.12, Figure 3.16
Escape through adjoining building ............................ C/AS1 3.6, Figure 3.11

Evacuation time .................................................... NZBC/F6.3.1

Exitways ...................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.5 c), 1.5.2, F8/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.3
pressurisation ....................................................... F7/AS1 1.3.7

Explosion
see Structure, loads, and Hazardous Substances and Processes

Explosives
see also Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 1 Explosives

External Moisture .................................................... E2
concealed spaces .................................................. NZBC/E2.3.5
concrete and concrete masonry buildings .................... E2/AS3 1.0
elements in contact with the ground .............................. NZBC/E2.3.3
external walls ........................................................ NZBC/E2.3.2
moisture present at completion of construction ................ NZBC/E2.3.6
qualifications ......................................................... E2/AS1 1.5, 8.2.2, 8.3.2, 8.4.2, 8.5.2, 9.2.3,
                                                      9.3.4.1, 9.4.3, 9.5.3, 9.6.2, 9.7.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2
roofs ................................................................... NZBC/E2.3.1, E2.3.2
scope ................................................................. E2/VM1 1.2, E2/AS1 1.0
construction excluded ............................................. E2/AS1 1.2
acoustics ............................................................ E2/AS1 1.2.3
commercial and industrial roofing ............................. E2/VM1 3.0
outbuildings .......................................................... E2/AS1 1.2.1
skillion roofs .......................................................... E2/VM1 3.0
spread of flame .................................................... E2/AS1 1.2.2
attached garages ................................................... E2/AS1 1.1
construction included ............................................ E2/AS1 1.1
provisions for snow ................................................ E2/AS1 1.3
qualifications ......................................................... E2/AS1 1.5
specific design ...................................................... E2/AS1 1.4
windows and doors ................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
snow ................................................................. NZBC/E2.3.1
suspended floors .................................................... NZBC/E2.3.4
### External Moisture (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verification Method</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, Appendix 1</td>
<td>E2/VM1 3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.1</td>
<td>E2/VM1 2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.3</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4</td>
<td>E2/VM1 1.4.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### F

**F rating**
- see Fire resistance ratings

**Factories**
- see Industrial buildings

**Falsework**
- see Structure

**Farm buildings**
- see Buildings, farm buildings

**Fascias**
- see Gutters, barge and fascias

**FHC**
- see Fire hazard category

**FI**
- see Flammability index

#### Fibre cement sheet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decorative attachments</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.3.6.2, 9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flush-finished systems</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.4, Figures 111-114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>control joints</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.4.1, Table 19, Figure 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finishes</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jointed systems</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.3, Figures 104A-108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paint finish</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limitations</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>material and installation</td>
<td>E2/AS3</td>
<td>9.7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installation</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.2.1, Tables 23 and 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parapets and enclosed balustrades</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flush-finished topped balustrades</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.1, Figure 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soffit details</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.5, Figures 8A and 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows and doors</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.7.6, Figures 115 and 116</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Fibre cement weatherboards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>installation</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.3, Table 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external corners</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.3.3, Figure 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixings</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.3.1, Table 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>internal corners</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.3.4, Figure 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laps and joints</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.3.2, Figure 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limitations</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>material performance</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parapets and enclosed balustrades</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protective coating</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows and doors</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows – direct fixed</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.4.1, Figures 17D and 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windows – on cavity</td>
<td>E2/AS1</td>
<td>9.5.4.2, Figures 17C and 91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Filters
- see Strainers

**Final exits**
- C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.14.5, 3.16.4, 3.17.1 c), 3.18.1, 6.20.18 a), Figures 3.1, 3.2, 3.12, 3.19, 3.24 and 3.31, Table 6.1; F8/AS1 3.1.1 a) b), 3.2.3 a)
Fire alarm systems
see Fire safety precautions

Fire engineering design .............................................................. C/AS1 1.1.7, 1.4.1

Fire fighting facilities ............................................................. C/AS1 8.2

Fire resistance ratings (FRR) ...................................................... C/AS1 1.3.2

Fire load energy density (FLED) ............................................ C/AS1 2.2.1

Fire load energy density (FLED) ............................................ C/AS1 2.2.1

Fire load energy density (FLED) ............................................ C/AS1 2.2.1

Fire load energy density (FLED) ............................................ C/AS1 2.2.1

Fireload energy density (FLED) ............................................. C/AS1 2.2.1

Fireload energy density (FLED) ............................................. C/AS1 2.2.1

Fireload energy density (FLED) ............................................. C/AS1 2.2.1

Fireload energy density (FLED) ............................................. C/AS1 2.2.1

Fireload energy density (FLED) ............................................. C/AS1 2.2.1

Fireload energy density (FLED) ............................................. C/AS1 2.2.1

Fireload energy density (FLED) ............................................. C/AS1 2.2.1
Fire safety

see Means of Escape, Outbreak of Fire, Spread of Fire, Structural Stability during Fire

Fire safety precautions (FSP) ............................................. C/AS1 1.2.3, 1.3.2 Step 6, 2.3.1, 3.1.5, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.3.1, 4.4.1, 4.5, 5.6.8, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, Appendix A, Table 4.1

automatic fire alarm system with modified smoke detection manual call points (Type 5) ............................................................... C/AS1 3.5.4, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, Table 4.1

detection and manual call points (Type 5) ............................... C/AS1 A2.1.1

domestic (Type 1) ........................................................................... C/AS1 A2.1.1

electrical power supply (Type 17) ................................................. C/AS1 6.23.1 d), 6.23.3, 6.23.4, A2.1

emergency lighting (Type 16) ......................................................... C/AS1 3.19.2, 6.23.3 c), 6.23.4, A2.1

emergency lighting in exitsways ...................................................... F7/AS1 1.5.2

fire alarm systems

activation of system ........................................................................ F7/AS1 2.1.1

automatic .................................................................................. F7/AS1 1.1.1, 1.2.3 to 1.2.7

heat detectors ................................................................................ F7/AS1 1.2.3, 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.4, 1.3.5

high sensitivity smoke detection ...................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.7

installation and maintenance ......................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3

manual (Type 2) ........................................................................... C/AS1 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1, F7/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2

means of communication with the Fire Service

see Alerting the Fire Service

modified smoke detection .......................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.5 to 1.2.7

requirements ............................................................................. F7/AS1 2.1

smoke detectors .......................................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3

substitution of smoke detectors by heat detectors ....................... F7/AS1 1.3.5

fire hose reels (Type 14) ................................................................. C/AS1 8.2.2, A2.1

fire hydrant systems (Type 18) ...................................................... C/AS1 8.2.1, A2.1

Fire Service lift controls (Type 15) ................................................. C/AS1 8.2.5, A2.1, F7/AS1 1.5.2

fire sprinklers (Type 6) ................................................................. C/AS1 3.9.12 f), 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 4.1.1 a), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 5.6.13, 6.3.2 a) d), 6.6.8, 6.6.17, 6.18.10, 6.19.9, A2.1, Appendix D, Figure 7.2

concessions for sprinklers ......................................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 c), 3.4.8 d), 3.5.2, 3.14.3, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 3.16.3 b), 4.2.5, 5.5.3, 5.6.6, 5.6.7 b), 5.6.8, 5.8.7, 5.8.8, 6.3.1, 6.5.1, 6.7.2, 6.9.6 d), 6.9.11, 6.10.5, 6.13.1, 6.20.5, 6.20.10, 6.20.15 a), 6.22.3 a), 7.2.2, 7.3.12, 7.7.6, 7.9.3, 7.9.10, 8.1.1 e), Tables 4.1 Note 5, 6.2

residential ................................................................. C/AS1 D3.1

with smoke detectors (Type 7) ............................................. C/AS1 3.12.2 b), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g), A2.1

fire sprinkler systems

automatic ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 1.3.2, 1.3.4

fire systems centre (Type 20) ......................................................... C/AS1 8.2.3, 8.2.4, A2.1

heat detectors (Type 3) ................................................................. C/AS1 3.5.3, 3.5.5, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.10.4 c), 6.11.3 b), A2.1

hold-open devices ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.3.6, 1.5.2

manual (Type 2) ................................................................. C/AS1 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1

mechanical smoke extract .......................................................... F7/AS1 1.3.8, 1.5.2

mechanical smoke extract (Type 11) ............................................. C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 c), 6.22.8 c), 6.22.11, 6.22.12, 6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.6

modified smoke/heat detection (Type 5) ........................................ C/AS1 3.5.4, A2.1

natural smoke venting .............................................................. F7/AS1 1.3.8, 1.5.2

natural smoke venting (Type 10) .................................................. C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 b), 6.22.8 b) c), 6.22.10, 6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.5

pressurisation of safe paths (Type 13) ............................................. C/AS1 3.7.1 b), 3.11.6 b), 6.9.6, 6.9.11, 6.13.1, 6.19.4 c), 6.21.2, 6.23.1 b), A2.1, B1.1.1, Table 6.1 Note 2; F7/AS1 1.3.7, 1.5.2

refuge areas (Type 19) ............................................................... C/AS1 3.13, A2.1, Figure 3.17

N E W Z E A L A N D B U I L D I N G C O D E H A N D B O O K

30 September 2010 DEPARTMENT OF BUILDING AND HOUSING

ARCHIVED
Fire safety precautions (FSP) (continued)

smoke control in air-handling systems
(Type 9) .......................................................... C/AS1 6.23.2, A2.1; F7/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.3
smoke detectors .................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
smoke detectors (Type 4) ........................................ C/AS1 3.5.4, 3.5.5, 3.12.2 b), 3.17.10, 4.5.4,
4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2.3 g), 6.22.14, 6.23.1,
A2.1, B1.1
voice communication system (Type 8) .................. C/AS1 3.16.3 d), 8.2.6, A2.1

Fire separations ........................................ C/AS1 1.3.5 b), 3.11.9, 4.1.1 a), 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 d) e), 5.6.3,
5.6.4 a), 5.6.5 c), 5.6.7, 5.7.2, 5.7.4, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6,
6.7, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1, 6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1,
6.11.2, 6.12, 6.14.1, 6.14.4, 6.15.1 a), 6.17, 6.18.4,
6.18.7 to 6.18.10, 7.2.1, 7.2.2, Table 6.1
junctions ......................................................... C/AS1 6.12.4 to 6.12.7, 6.12.9, 6.18.4, Figure 6.4
protected shafts .............................................. C/AS1 6.16, Figure 6.8

Fire Service ................................................ C/AS1 4.2.6 c), 5.9.3 f), 6.21.2, 6.22.12 b),
Part 8, A2.1.1 Type 15 and Type 20;
F7/AS1 1.2.2, 2.1.2 a), 2.2

see also Alerting the Fire Service
installation and maintenance ..................... F7/AS1 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
manual .......................................................... F7/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2
means of communication with ....................... C/AS1 A1.3.1, A2.1.1 Type 2 and Type 7
requirements .................................................. F7/AS1 2.1
activation of system ......................................... F7/AS1 2.1.1
smoke detectors ............................................... F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
vehicular access .......................................... C/AS1 8.1.1, 8.1.2

Fire shutters
see Fire resisting closures

Fire spread
horizontal ........................................................ C/AS1 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 b), 7.3, 7.8
vertical ......................................................... C/AS1 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 a), 7.9
between different levels of the same building .... C/AS1 7.9.10 to 7.9.15
external thermal insulation ............................. C/AS1 7.9.18, 7.9.19, Figure 7.12
from an adjacent lower roof ............................. C/AS1 7.9.6 to 7.9.9, Figure 7.11
roof car parking and storage ............................ C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17

Fire stopping ........................................... C/AS1 6.12.5, 6.12.7 a), 6.12.9, 6.17, 6.18.4, C6.1.1, C6.1.2,
Figures 6.4, 6.9 and 6.11
cavity barriers ................................................ C/AS1 6.18.4, 6.18.6, Figure 6.12
curtain walls .................................................. C/AS1 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
external thermal insulation ............................. C/AS1 7.9.18, Figure 7.12
hollow construction ....................................... C/AS1 6.17.5, Figure 6.12
protected shafts ............................................ C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.16.3, 6.16.4 e), Figure 6.8
service outlets ................................................ C/AS1 6.17.6, Figure 6.9

Firecell rating (F)
see Fire resistance ratings

Firecells .......................................................... F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.7, 1.3.1, 1.3.4, 1.3.5
basements ..................................................... C/AS1 3.7, 4.5.15, 6.14.4
buildings remaining occupied during fire ........ C/AS1 5.8.9, 5.6.10
car parking .................................................... C/AS1 6.10.3 to 6.10.6
ceiling space firecells ..................................... C/AS1 6.12.8
concealed spaces .......................................... C/AS1 6.18.2, 6.18.3
concessions for multiple purpose groups .......... C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8
construction ................................................ C/AS1 6.12
fire hazard category 4 .................................... C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13
fire safety precautions
see Fire safety precautions
firecells rated F0 ........................................... C/AS1 6.2
floor area limits ............................................. C/AS1 4.2.3 to 4.2.5
group sleeping areas ..................................... C/AS1 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.5
intermediate floors ....................................... C/AS1 4.5.16 to 4.5.18, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3,
to 6.21.6, Figure 6.6, Tables 6.5 and 6.6
Firecells (continued)

limited area atriums................................................. C/AS1 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6
plant, boiler and incinerator rooms ........................................ C/AS1 6.11.3, 6.11.4
protected shafts ........................................................................ C/AS1 6.16
provision of firecells .................................................................... C/AS1 4.2
roofs ......................................................................................... C/AS1 7.8.1 to 7.8.5, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9
solid waste storage ................................................................... C/AS1 6.10.2
suites ......................................................................................... C/AS1 2.2.9, 3.15.5, 6.6.5, 6.7.6, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, A2.1.1 Type 5
top floor firecells ......................................................................... C/AS1 4.5.14

Fireplace ................................................................................... C/AS1 9.1 to 9.3, Figures 9.1 and 9.3, Table 9.1

Fire Safety ............................................................................ C/AS1, C/VM1

Fixings................................................................. E2/AS1 4.4, 8.1.4, 8.2.4, 8.3.7, 8.4.8, 8.4.8.1, 8.4.9, 8.4.9.1, 9.4.3.1,
9.4.3.3, 9.4.5.2, 9.5.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.7.3.1, 9.8.3.1, 9.9.4.1,
Tables 14, 15, 20-22, 24, Figures 39 and 40

Fixtures
sanitary fixtures see Personal Hygiene

Amend 12

Flame barriers .................................................. C/AS1 3.14.6 b) c), 6.18.5 c), 6.20.12 a), 6.20.13, 6.20.14 b),
C9.1, Tables 6.3

Flammability index (FI)............................................................................ C/AS1 C3.1, Table 6.2

Flammable liquids
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 3 flammable liquids

Flammable solids
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 4 flammable solids

Flashings......................................................... E2/AS1 4.0, 8.2.4, 8.2.6, 8.3.8, 8.4.11, 8.4.11.1, 8.4.12, 9.2.4, 9.6.7,
Tables 20-22, Figures 5 and 6
apron flashings ..................................................... E2/AS1 5.1, 8.4.12 b), Figures 7, 35 and 44
head flashings .......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.1.0.4, Table 7
jamb flashings ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.6
materials ............................................................................ E2/AS1 4.1, 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.3, 9.8.5, Tables 20-22
aluminium ....................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.2
aluminium-zinc coated steel ......................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.4
bituminous ........................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.10
butyl rubber ........................................................................ E2/AS1 4.3.9
copper .................................................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.6
EPDM ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.9
flexible flashing tape .............................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.11
galvanised steel ................................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.3
lead sheet ................................................................................ E2/AS1 4.3.7
stainless steel ................................................................. E2/AS1 4.3.5
uPVC ...................................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.1
zinc sheet ............................................................................... E2/AS1 4.3.8
overlap with upstands ......................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.5, Table 7
apron flashing cover over metal roofing ........................................ E2/AS1 4.6.1.1
barges .................................................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.5, Figure 47, Table 7
change in metal roof pitches .............................................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.3, Figure 44, Table 7
inter-storey junctions ............................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.7, Figure 70, Table 7
parallel flashing ................................................................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.1, Figures 47 and 48
ridges and hips ............................................................... E2/AS1 4.6.1.2, Figure 46, Table 7
roof- or deck-to-wall junctions ............................................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.4, Figure 7, Table 7
transverse flashing ............................................................ E2/AS1 4.6.1.1, Figure 7, Table 7
window and door heads .................................................. E2/AS1 4.6.1.6, Figures 71 and 81, Table 7
requirements ........................................................................ E2/AS1 4.5
edge treatments ................................................................. E2/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 5
metal flashing joints ............................................................ E2/AS1 4.5.2, Figure 6
Flats
see Housing, multi-unit dwelling

FLED
see Fire load energy density

Flooding
flooding risk assessment ................................................................. E1/VM1 3.2.2
history of ........................................................................................... E1/AS1 1.0.1
protection from .................................................................................. E1/VM1 3.2.2

Floors ................................................... NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), D1.3.3 (e), D1.3.4 (c), E2.3.3, E2.3.4, G6.3.1, G6.3.2,
                                 F7/AS1 1.1.2, G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3,
                                 2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6

basement floors ........................................... C/AS1 3.3.2 i), 3.15.2, 3.14.4, Figure 3.19
concealed spaces ................................................................. C/AS1 6.18.4, 6.18.5 a), 6.18.10

fire resistance ratings ............................. C/AS1 3.14.6 c), 4.1.1 a), 4.3.2, 4.5.7, 5.3.1, 5.6.4 d),
                                 5.6.8, 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.12.2, 6.14.2 to 6.14.4, 6.15.1
floor projections .......................................................... C/AS1 7.8.6, 7.9.13
flooring materials .................................................. C/AS1 6.20.8, 6.20.14
intermediate floors ................................................ C/AS1 3.3.2 f), 3.4.6, 3.9.13, 4.5.16 to 4.5.18,
                                 5.6.4 d), 5.6.5 b), 6.10.3, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3, 6.22,
                                 A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, B4.1.1, Figures 3.9 and 6.6,
                                 Tables 6.4 to 6.6
limited area intermediate floors ...................... C/AS1 4.5.17, 6.21.4 a), 6.21.5, 6.21.6
lower floors .................................................. C/AS1 3.16.9, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.7.7, 6.9.3, Figure 3.5
more than one purpose group on a floor .............. C/AS1 4.5.1 to 4.5.6, 5.6.11
other floors in a building .............................................. C/AS1 4.5.8 to 4.5.11
same purpose group on different floors .................. C/AS1 4.5.13
slowing floors and ceilings ........................................ C/AS1 3.4.8 a)
subfloor spaces .................................................. C/AS1 6.15.1, 6.18.5 a), Figure 6.7
top floor firecells .................................................. C/AS1 4.5.14
upper floors ..................................................... C/AS1 3.15.3 b), 3.16.3 a), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 6.7.7,
                                 6.8.2, 6.8.6, 7.5.7, Figure 3.5
wooden floors .................................................. C/AS1 6.12.6, 6.20.14
floor/ceiling assemblies ........................................ G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3
floor/wall junctions ................................................ G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 5
minimum floor level ................................................ E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2
moisture ................................................................. NZBC/E2.3.4
slip resistant ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.3 (d); G15/AS1 3.0.2

Floor outlets ................................................................. G13/AS1 3.4
Floor wastes ............................................................... E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2, Figure 4
Foamed plastics building materials .................. C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.5 6.20.11 to 6.20.13, 7.9.18, Figure 7.12, Table 6.3

Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination .................................................. G3
cooking .......................................................... NZBC/G3.3.1 (c); G3/AS1 1.2.1, 1.4.1
energy supply ................................................. NZBC/G3.3.3
location .......................................................... NZBC/G3.3.4
preparation ...................................................... NZBC/G3.3.5
prevention of contamination .......................................................... NZBC/G3.3.6
refrigeration ..................................................... G3/AS1 1.1.1
storage .......................................................... NZBC/G3.3.1 (a); G3/AS1 1.3.1
ventilation ................................................. G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.3.4

Foul Water ........................................................................ G13
see also Discharge pipes, Drains, Sanitary appliances, Sanitary fixtures, Vent pipes,
Water seals, Water traps

Foundations ............................................................ B1/VM4
see also Chimneys, foundations
design parameters
continuous vibration ........................................ B1/VM4 1.0.6
depth .................................................................. B1/VM4 2.0.4
ground stability ................................................ B1/VM4 1.0.4
long-term loading ............................................. B1/VM4 2.0.6
short-term loading ........................................... B1/VM4 2.0.6

serviceability deformations .............................. B1/VM4 1.0.3, Appendix B

piles
belled piles .................................................. B1/VM4 4.0.3 b), 5.1.2
bulbed piles .................................................. B1/VM4 4.0.3 c)
concrete piles

cast-in-situ .................................................. B1/VM4 3.4.4
precast .......................................................... B1/VM4 3.4.4, 5.1.1

drivings .......................................................... B1/VM4 4.5
nominal width ................................................ B1/VM4 4.2.2, 4.6.1
notations ...................................................... B1/VM4 4.1.1, Table 2

pile driving .................................................. B1/VM4 4.1.1, Table 2
pile driving formula .................................. B1/VM4 4.0.1

pile groups
design pile lateral strength ............................. B1/VM4 4.0.4

ultimate lateral strength .............................. B1/VM4 4.6.1, Table 3

ultimate vertical strength ............................. B1/VM4 4.4.1
Foundations (continued)

single piles

- base resistance ................................................................. B1/VM4 4.1.3, Figures 3 and 4
- column action ........................................................................ B1/VM4 4.2
- design pile lateral strength .................................................. B1/VM4 4.0.4
- design pile vertical strength .................................................. B1/VM4 4.0.4
- lateral strength .......................................................................... B1/VM4 4.3
  - drained cohesionless soil .................................................. B1/VM4 4.3.4
  - free head pile ................................................................. B1/VM4 4.3.2 a), 4.3.3 a), 4.3.4 a)
  - restrained head pile ......................................................... B1/VM4 4.3.2 b), 4.3.3 b), 4.3.4 b)
  - undrained cohesive soil ...................................................... B1/VM4 4.3.2
  - undrained consolidated soil ................................................ B1/VM4 4.3.3
- shaft resistance ................................................................. B1/VM4 4.1.4, Figure 5, Table 2
- ultimate axial compression ..................................................... B1/VM4 4.0.1 to 4.0.3
- vertical strength ...................................................................... B1/VM4 4.1.2
- strength reduction factors ...................................................... B1/VM4 4.7, Table 4
  - types
    - concrete ................................................................. B1/VM4 5.1.1, 5.1.2
    - steel ................................................................. B1/VM4 5.2.1, 5.2.2
    - timber ............................................................ B1/VM4 5.3
- shallow foundations ........................................................... B1/VM4 3.0
  - concrete slab-on-ground .................................................. B1/AS1 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, B1/AS3 1.3
  - design bearing pressure .................................................. B1/VM4 3.2.1, 3.2.4
  - design bearing strength ................................................... B1/VM4 3.2.3
  - design sliding resistance .................................................. B1/VM4 3.4.6
  - local shear ........................................................................ B1/VM4 3.3.3
  - moment loading .................................................................... B1/VM4 3.1.4
  - notation ............................................................................ B1/VM4 3.1.4, Figures 1 and 2
  - soils .................................................................................. B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3
  - strength reduction factors .................................................. B1/VM4 3.5
  - surcharge ........................................................................... B1/VM4 3.1.3
  - ultimate bearing strength .................................................. B1/VM4 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
  - ultimate sliding resistance .................................................. B1/VM4 3.4.2
  - ultimate sliding strength .................................................... B1/VM4 3.4.4, 3.4.5

see also Chimneys, foundations

FRR
  see Fire resistance ratings

FSP
  see Fire safety precautions
G

Garages
see Outbuildings

Gas  .................................................................................................................. G3/AS1 1.4.1

Gas as an Energy Source .................................................................................. G11
  automatic cut-offs ......................................................................................... NZBC/G11.3.2
  flued appliances ............................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.3
  gas supply authority ....................................................................................... NZBC/G11.3.6
  isolation devices ............................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.4
  meters ............................................................................................................ NZBC/G11.3.6
  location ........................................................................................................... G11/AS1 3.6
  over pressure protection .................................................................................. G11/AS1 5.0
  safe pressure ranges ....................................................................................... NZBC/G11.3.1
  service risers ................................................................................................. NZBC/G11.3.6
  supply system ............................................................................................... NZBC/G11.2, G11.3.1, G11.3.5

Gas burning appliances
  installation ......................................................................................................... C/AS1 9.2
  seismic restraint ............................................................................................ C/AS1 9.2.2

Gases
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 2 gases

Gas fuel appliances ......................................................................................... G4/AS1 2.0, 3.0

Gas reticulation
  another Acceptable Solution ........................................................................... G10/AS1 5.0
  cleaning .......................................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.1
  tailpipes ......................................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.1.3
  concealed piping ........................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.4
  in concrete ..................................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.4.1
  in enclosed spaces ......................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.4.2
  underground ................................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.4.3, Table 3
  construction .................................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.0
  corrosion control ......................................................................................... G10/AS1 3.0
  design ............................................................................................................ G10/AS1 1.0.1 a)
  installation .................................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.2
  bends and offsets ......................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.2.1 d)
  risers ............................................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.2.1 c)
  separation ...................................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.2.1 b)
  supports ....................................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.2.1 a), Table 2
  isolating valves .............................................................................................. G10/AS1 2.0
  materials ....................................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.0.1 b), Table 1
  pipework in ducts ......................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.5
  unventilated ducts ......................................................................................... G10/AS1 1.5.4
  ventilated ducts ............................................................................................. G10/AS1 1.5.3
  vent lines ....................................................................................................... G10/AS1 4.0, Tables 4 and 5
  welded joints ................................................................................................ G10/AS1 1.3

Geology ............................................................................................................ B1/VM4 A1.2.1 a)

Glazing ........................................................................................................... NZBC/F2.3.3; B1/AS1 7.0; C/AS1 5.8, 6.19.11
see also Hazardous Building Materials
  concession for sprinklers ............................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.7, 5.8.8
  dimensions .................................................................................................... C/AS1 5.8.3 to 5.8.5
  fire resisting glazing ..................................................................................... C/AS1 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 7.3.3 c),
  7.3.5, 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
  human impact safety ..................................................................................... C/AS1 5.8.2 a)
  in external walls ........................................................................................... C/AS1 5.8.10
  in fire doors .................................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.10
  in fire separations ....................................................................................... C/AS1 5.8.1, 5.8.2
  in safe paths ................................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.1 c), 5.8.3 to 5.8.8, Figure 5.1
  in smoke control doors ............................................................................... C/AS1 5.8.10, 5.8.11
  in smoke separations and protected paths .................................................. C/AS1 5.8.9
  modifications to NZS 4223 .......................................................................... F2/AS1 1.2
Government agencies .......................................................... NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Government offices ............................................................ NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Grease traps ........................................................................... G13/AS2 3.4
capacity ................................................................................... G13/AS2 3.4.3, 3.4.4

Ground

good ground ................................................................. B1/AS2 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, B1/AS3 1.3.2

Ground conditions .......................................................... B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendix A

Groundwater ................................................................. B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendices A, B; G14/VM1 1.6.1
conditions ............................................................................... B1/VM4 1.0.2
seasonal changes .................................................................. B1/VM4 A1.2.1
tidal changes ........................................................................ B1/VM4 A1.2.1

Group sleeping areas ................................................ C/AS1 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.4

Gully traps ................................................................. G13/AS1 Figures 5 and 7, G13/AS2 3.3, Figures 2 and 3
construction ........................................................................ G13/AS2 3.3.1, Figure 4
overflow relief ......................................................................... G13/AS2 3.3.2
pipe diameters ........................................................................ G13/AS2 3.3.1

Gutters .................................................................................. E1/AS1 5.0
gradients ................................................................................ E1/AS1 5.3
materials ............................................................................... E1/AS1 5.1, Table 6
overflow outlets ....................................................................... E1/AS1 5.5
sizing .................................................................................. E1/AS1 5.1, Figures 15 and 16
thermal movement ................................................................ E1/AS1 5.4, Table 7

Gutters, barges, and fascias ................................................. E2/AS1 5.2, 8.1.6, 8.3.9, 8.4.14, 8.5.10, Figures 20 and 64
internal gutters ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, 8.4.16, 8.4.18, 8.4.18.3, Figure 52
parallel hidden gutters ....................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
valley gutters ............................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figures 37 and 51
H

Habitable spaces...........NZBC/E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.3, G6.2, G7.2; G6/AS1 1.0.2

Halls
see Communal non-residential

Halls of residence
see Communal residential

Handicapped people
see People with disabilities

Handrails ......................NZBC/D1.3.3 (j) (k), D1.3.4 (i); C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c); D1/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.4 b), 1.6.1, 1.7, 5.2.1 g), 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, Figures 6 and 19

clearances .............................................. D1/AS1 6.0.7, Figure 26
handrail profiles ........................................ D1/AS1 6.0.7 to 6.0.9, Figure 26
height .......................................................... D1/AS1 6.0.6, Figure 25
horizontal extensions ................................. D1/AS1 6.0.4, 6.0.5, Figure 25
intermediate handrails .................................. D1/AS1 6.0.2
relevant width ............................................. D1/AS1 6.0.9, Figure 26
slope .......................................................... D1/AS1 6.0.4

Hazard to building elements ............................................ F1/VM1 2.7

Hazardous Agents on Site ................................................. F1

see also Site investigation
assessment of sites ..............................................NZBC/F1.3.1
contaminants ................................................. F1/VM1 1.0.2 c, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 g), 2.2.2, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.6.2, 2.6.3, Table 2
degradation of building materials .................................. F1/VM1 2.7
likely effects on people ........................................... NZBC/F1.3.2
hazardous agents .............................................. F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.5.5, Table 2
network utility operators ........................................... F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)
remedial work ............................................... F1/VM1 2.6, Table 3
risk assessment ................................................. F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.5, 2.5.4

Hazardous Building Materials ........................................ F2

see also Glazing
asbestos ......................................................... F2/AS1 2.0
brittle materials ..............................................NZBC/F2.3.3
harmful concentrations ......................................... NZBC/F2.3.1
transparent panels .......................................... NZBC/F2.3.2

Hazard category
see Fire hazard categories

Hazardous Substances and Processes ................................ F3

Class 1 ......................................................... F3/VM1 3.1
Class 2 ......................................................... F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1
Class 3.1 ..................................................... F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1
Class 4 ......................................................... F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1
Class 5 ......................................................... F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1

control of adverse effects of ignition ......................... F3/VM1 3.1
control of ignition ......................................... F3/VM1 3.1
isolation distances ........................................... F3/VM1 3.2
methods of construction ....................................... F3/VM1 3.2
other legislation ............................................. F3/VM1 1.0
scope ......................................................... F3/VM1 2.0
secondary containment systems ........................... F3/VM1 3.3
security ....................................................... F3/VM1 3.4
explosions ................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (c)
food preparation and utensil washing areas ................. NZBC/G3.3.2 (b)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Amendments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hazardous wastes</td>
<td>G14/VM1</td>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health camps</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hearths</td>
<td>B1/AS3</td>
<td>Amend 12 Oct 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat detectors</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat transfer solid fuel appliances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height clearances</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hobs</td>
<td>G3/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hospitals</td>
<td>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv); G1/AS1 Table 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot dip galvanising</td>
<td>B1/AS3</td>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot water supply</td>
<td>G3/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hotels</td>
<td>D1/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household units</td>
<td>C/AS1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Housing</td>
<td>NZBC/A1 2.0, D1.3.3, E1.3.2, G1.3.5, G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G3.3.2 (c), G7.2, G12.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.3.2; F3/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1; G9/AS1 1.0; H1/VM1 1.0, 1.2, H1/AS1 1.0, 2.0</td>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detached dwellings</td>
<td>NZBC/A1 2.0.2, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F7.3, F8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1 1.2</td>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group dwellings</td>
<td>NZBC/A1 2.0.4, G8.2; H1/VM1 1.1.2</td>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi-unit dwellings</td>
<td>NZBC/A1 2.0.3, C3.3.2, D1.3.2 (ii), F6.2, F8.2, G8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1 1.1, 1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.2</td>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HVAC systems</td>
<td>F7/AS1</td>
<td>Amend 11 Sep 2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Index**

hazardous substances associated with building services .................................................. NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
protected ignition sources ............................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (d)
release of pressure ........................................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (c)
released during fire ........................................................................................................... NZBC/C3.2 (d), C3.3.10
rendering hazardous materials harmless ......................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (e)
sewers and public drains .................................................................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (b)
signs ...................................................................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (g)
surface finishes .................................................................................................................. NZBC/F3.3 (f)
unauthorised access .......................................................................................................... NZBC/F3.3 (a)
Identification of non-potable water supply ............................................ G12/AS1 4.2.1

see also Water supplies

Illuminance .................................................. G7/VM1 1.0; G8/VM1 1.0, G8/AS1 1.0

measurement .................................................. G8/VM1 1.0.1

minimum .................................................. G8/AS1 1.0.3

Impact insulation class (IIC)............................................................ G6/VM1 2.0

In-service history ........................................... B2/VM1 1.1

Industrial buildings................. NZBC/A1 6.0, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, E3.3.1, G1.3.5, G3.2.1,

G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b), G3.3.6, G8.2, G9.3.4, G12.3.9,

H1.2 (a); G1/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0.2

Industrial Liquid Waste .................................................. G14

capacity .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.2 (a)

collection .................................................. G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.4

location of facilities .................................................. G14/VM1 1.4

contamination of potable water .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.2 (c)

conveyance systems .................................................. G14/VM1 2.0

drainage .................................................. G14/VM1 2.2

piping systems .................................................. G14/VM1 2.3, Table 3

pumps .................................................. G14/VM1 2.4, Figure 2

corrosion .................................................. G14/VM1 1.5.1, 1.5.2

disposal .................................................. G14/VM1 1.1.1, Table 1, Figure 1

location of facilities .................................................. G14/VM1 1.4

to a sewer .................................................. G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2

disposal systems .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.1

hazardous wastes

see Hazardous wastes

industry types .................................................. G14/VM1 1.2.2, Table 1

materials used in construction .................................................. G14/VM1 1.5.1

odours .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.1 (c), G14.3.2 (f)

resource consents .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.2 (d)

security .................................................. G14/VM1 3.3.2

separation of waste .................................................. G14/VM1 1.9

storage .................................................. G14/VM1 1.7.1

containers .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.1

location of facilities .................................................. G14/VM1 1.4

tanks

see Tanks

treatment.................................................. G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2, 1.2.2, 1.4, Figure 1, Table 1

location of facilities .................................................. G14/VM1 1.4

unauthorised access .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.2 (g)

vehicle access .................................................. NZBC/G14.3.2 (b)

Inspection chambers

see Maintenance access to drains

Inspection points

see Maintenance access to drains

Insulation

see Fire resistance ratings

Integrity

see Fire resistance ratings

Intellectually handicapped persons

see People with disabilities
Intended Life
see Durability

Intended use ........................................ NZBC/G1.3.1, B1.3.2, D1.3.5 (a), E3.3.5, F1.3.2 (a), F3.3 (f), F4.3.2, G2.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a), G3.3.6, G5.2.1 (b), G9.2, G11.1 (c), G11.2, G12.3.5, G15.2

Interface with ancillary control systems ................................................................. F7/AS1 1.5

Interior Environment ............................................................................................... G5
accessible reception areas ................................................................................ NZBC/G5.3.4
adequate activity space ................................................................................ NZBC/G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b)
see also Activity space
enhanced listening systems ................................................................................ NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6
internal temperature ............................................................................................ NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1;
G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2
unsafe installations ............................................................................................... NZBC/G5.1 (c), G5.2.2, G5.3.2

Interior lighting
see Artificial Light .................................................................................................... G8

Interior linings ........................................................................................................ G3/AS1 1.6, 2.2
ceilings .................................................................................................................. G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3
floors .................................................................................................................... G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3 to 2.3.6
walls ..................................................................................................................... G3/AS1 1.6, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.4

Interior surfaces ..................................................................................................... G7/AS1 1.0.2 to 1.0.4, Table 1

Intermediate floors
see Floors

Internal Moisture ..................................................................................................... E3
concealed spaces ................................................................................ NZBC/E3.3.6, E3/AS1 3.2.2
condensation ....................................................................................................... E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.1.5, 1.3
condensation channels ........................................................................................ E3/AS1 1.3
energy efficiency .................................................................................................. E3/AS1 1.1.5
floor surfaces ....................................................................................................... NZBC/E3.3.3, E3.3.5
free water overflow .............................................................................................. NZBC/E3.2 (b), E3.3.2
fungal growth ...................................................................................................... NZBC/E3.2 (a); E3/AS1 1.0.1
overflow containment ........................................................................................... E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1
floor waste .......................................................................................................... E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2
people with disabilities ...................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.2
steel framing ........................................................................................................ E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)
thermal break ...................................................................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)
thermal resistance .............................................................................................. NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.1
materials and installation .................................................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.3
ventilation ............................................................................................................. NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2
wall surfaces ...................................................................................................... NZBC/E3.3.4, E3.3.5
watersplash ......................................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.0
basins ................................................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
baths ..................................................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
joints in linings ................................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 2
lining materials .................................................................................................. E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
showers ............................................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
sinks .................................................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
tubs ..................................................................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
urinals .................................................................................................................. E3/AS1 3.3.6
windows .............................................................................................................. E3/AS1 1.3.1
Isolating valves .......................................................... G12/AS1 3.7.1, 5.4.2

Jetties
see Ancillary buildings

Kerbs .......................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.4 a), Figure 6
see also Ramps

Kindergartens
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential

Kitchens
see Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination

Kitchen sinks ......................................................... G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2

Laboratory testing .................................................. B2/VM1 1.2

Ladders .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.0
see also Stairs and ladders

height: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.2, 5.1.7
individual rung-type ladders: .................................. D1/AS1 5.1.1 c), 5.4, Figure 24

clearance: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 c)
height: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 c)
rungs: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 a)
tread width: .................................................. D1/AS1 5.4.1 b)
width: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.4.1 b)
landings: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.2
length: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.5, 5.1.7
width: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.4
location: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.1.3
rung spacing: .................................................. D1/AS1 5.1.6
rung-type ladders: .............................................. D1/AS1 5.1.1 b), 5.3, Figure 20

clearances: .................................................. D1/AS1 5.3.1 e)
height: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 d)
landings: .................................................. D1/AS1 5.3.2, Figure 23
rungs: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 b)
slope: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 a)
width: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.3.1 c)
safety enclosures: .......................................... D1/AS1 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
step-type ladders: .......................................... D1/AS1 5.1.1 a), 5.2, 5.2.1, Figure 19

clearances: .................................................. D1/AS1 5.2.1 e)
height: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 d)
horizontal openings: .................................. D1/AS1 5.2.1 f)
slope: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 a)
treads: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 b)
width: .......................................................... D1/AS1 5.2.1 c)
types of ladders: ........................................ D1/AS1 5.1.1

Landings ................................................................ NZBC/D1.3.2 (l) (m), D1.3.4 (l)

Landslip ............................................................ B1/VM4 A1.2.1 a)
### Laundering

- Electricity supply: G2/AS1 1.1.2
- Laundry tubs: E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3; G2/AS1 1.0.1 a), 1.0.2, 1.1.1; G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2

#### Another Acceptable Solution
- Capacity: G2/AS1 1.0.2 a)
- Size: G2/AS1 1.0.2 b)
- Minimum dimensions: G2/AS1 1.2.1, Figure 1

#### Lavatories

- See Personal Hygiene

#### Legionella bacteria


### Level access routes

- Protection from falling: D1/AS1 2.3
- Slip resistance: D1/AS1 2.1, Table 2
- Width: D1/AS1 2.2

### Libraries

- See Communal non-residential

### Lifts

- See also Mechanical Installations for Access

#### Doors

- C/AS1 6.19.13, Table 6.1

#### Fire Service lift control

- C/AS1 8.2.5, A2.1.1 Type 15

#### Lift motor room

- C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.16.4 c)

### Light

- See Artificial Light, Natural Light, Lighting for Emergency

#### Light switches

- G9/AS1 2.0.1 a) b)

#### Lighting of access routes

- D1/AS1 1.5.4, 1.8

#### Lighting for emergency

- See 'Visibility in Escape Routes'

### Limited area atriums

- C/AS1 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6

### Limited area intermediate floors

- See Floors

### Liquid fuel

- See Piped Services, Hazardous Substances and Processes

### Loadings

- See Design, loadings

### Loads

- See Structure, loads

#### Location of heat and smoke detectors

- F7/AS1 1.3

#### Low-risk areas

- F4/AS1 1.2.2
MAINTENANCE

Maintenance access to drains ................................................. E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12; G13/AS2 Figure 12
access points ......................................................... E1/AS1 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, G13/AS2 5.7, Figures 9 to 12
inspection chambers ....................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11; G13/AS2 Figure 11
inspection points ......................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), G13/AS2 5.7, Figure 9
location .............................................................................. G13/AS2 5.7.4
rodding points .......................................................... E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10; G13/AS2 5.7.4 fl, Figure 10

Marae see Housing, group dwellings

Masonry
see Design, masonry masonry buildings .................................................. B1/AS1 1.1.1

Masonry tiles ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.2
anti-ponding boards ........................................................ E2/AS1 8.2.5, Figure 25
details and flashings ....................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.6, Figures 23-28, 73D and 73E
flashings and fixings ...................................................... E2/AS1 8.2.4, Tables 20-22
general ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.2.2
installation ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.2.3, Tables 10, 20 and 23
materials ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.2.1
tile profiles ................................................................ E2/AS1 8.2.1.1
penetrations ............................................................ E2/AS1 8.2.7, Figures 29-31

Masonry veneer ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, 9.2, Table 18
cavities ............................................................................ E2/AS1 9.2.6, Figure 73C
control joints ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.2.8, Figure 73A
clay bricks ................................................................ E2/AS1 9.2.8.1, Figure 73A
cement bricks ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.8.2, Figure 73A
flashings ...................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.4
foundation support and damp proofing .............................. E2/AS1 9.2.8.2, Figure 73A
general ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.2.2
installation ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.3, Table 23, Figure 73B
limitations ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.2.1
openings ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.9, Table 18D
secondary cladding ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.1
wall ties ...................................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.7, Tables 18A-18C
windows and doors ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.2.10, Figures 73C and 73D

Means of Escape
see Escape routes, Evacuation time, Exitways, Final exits,
Fire hazard category, Open paths, Safe paths, Safe place, Travel distance

MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS FOR ACCESS

control system .......................................................... NZBC/D2.3.1 (e)
emergency conditions ................................................ NZBC/D2.3.3
escalators ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.3 (e)
lifts ......................................................................... NZBC/D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.2 (c), D1.3.4 (c); D1/AS1 12.0
lighting .................................................................. NZBC/D2.3.2 (c)
loads ................................................................. NZBC/D2.3.1 (a)
location of potentially dangerous equipment .................. NZBC/D2.3.4
people with disabilities ........................................... NZBC/D2.3.5
servicing mechanical installations ............................... NZBC/D2.1 (b)
Mechanical ventilation
see Ventilation

Medical consultancy rooms ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Communal non-residential

Membrane cappings ................................................................................. E2/AS1 6.5

Metal cappings ......................................................................................... E2/AS1 6.4, 7.4.4, 9.9.10.2, Figure 9

Membrane roofs and decks ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.5
butyl and EPDM ..................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.4
control joints .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.7
gutters ...................................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.10.1, Figure 64
installation ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.5
butyl and EPDM ................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.2
plywood .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.5.5.1
junctions ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.8, Figures 57, 58 and 61-62
with walls ................................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.5.8.1, Figure 62
limitations ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.1, Figure 17A
penetrations ............................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.5.9, Figures 59 and 60
handrails ................................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.5.9.1
plywood substrates ............................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.3
roof and deck drainage ......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.5.6, Figures 56-64

Mixing devices
see Water supply, hot

Moisture
see External Moisture, Internal Moisture, Surface Water

Motels ................................................................. D1/AS1 9.1.1
see also Communal residential

Municipal offices ................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
see also Commercial buildings

Museums
see Communal non-residential
Natural Light

- Awareness of the outside environment: NZBC/G7.1, G7.2, G7.3.2
- Minimum illuminance: NZBC/G7.3.1

Natural ventilation

- See Ventilation

Network utility operators

- NZBC/G11.3.6, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, H1.1; F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)
- G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2

No-sky line condition

- NZBC/G7/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3

Non-potable water supply

- See Water supply

Non-return valves

- NZBC/G12/AS1 Figures 7 to 10, Table 6

Notional boundary

- C/AS1 7.3.13 to 7.3.15, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.7.1, Table 7.4

Nurses’ or Nursing homes

- See Communal residential
O

Obstructions .................................................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 1.5

dangerous projections ..................................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.4, Figure 6

isolated columns ........................................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.5, Figure 7

major projections .......................................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.3, Figure 5

minor projections ......................................................................... D1/AS1 1.5.1, 1.5.2, Figure 4

Occupants .................................................................................... NZBC/D2.3.5 (b), G1.3.3 (e)

occupant densities .......................................................................... C/AS1 2.3.3, 3.4.6 b), Table 2.2

occupant load ................................................................................ F7/AS1 1.1.2 a), 2.1.1, F6/AS1 Appendix A

occupant loads – specific requirements

and limitations ............................................................................. C/AS1 2.3, 3.3.2, 3.4.5, 3.4.8 c), 3.6.1 a) d), 3.9.11, 3.9.12 b) e), 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.12.2 b), 3.15.1 d), 3.16.3 c), 3.17.9 a) Step 1 and Step 2, 4.5.15, 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.4.1, 6.20.6 a), 6.20.7 a), 6.20.19, 6.21.5 c), 6.22.2 c) d) f), B4.1.1, Tables 3.1 and 4.1

Occupied spaces ................................................................. C/AS1 3.2.1, 3.3.2 d), 6.6.7, 6.7.4, 6.22.3, Tables 2.1 and 6.2; G4/AS1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 a), G6/AS1 1.0.1 a)

Odours

see Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste

Offices

see Commercial buildings

Oil fired appliances

installation ....................................................................................... C/AS1 9.3

seismic restraint ............................................................................... C/AS1 9.3.2

Old people’s homes ......................... NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a) (b), G5.3.1 to G5.3.3, G5.3.5, G7.2, G12.3.4; G1/AS1 Table 4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1; G5/AS1 1.0.3, 2.0, Table 3

see also Communal residential buildings

On-site disposal ................................................................. C/AS1 9.5, Figures 9.1 and 9.3

Open fires ................................................................. C/AS1 9.5, Figures 9.1 and 9.3

Open paths ................................................................................. F6/AS1 3.1.1 a)

see Escape routes

Opening windows ................................................................. C/AS1 9.5, Figures 9.1 and 9.3

Other property ................................................................. C/AS1 4.3.2, 5.3.2 d), 6.1.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 b), 7.3.15 a), 7.7.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.6 b), 7.9.10 d), Tables 6.1 and 7.3

Outbuildings ................................................................. NZBC/A1 7.0, D1.2.1, D1.3.2, D1.3.3 (h) (i), G1.3.4, G8.2, G12.3.8; G1/AS1 Table 4

Ovens

see Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, cooking

Overflow ................................................................. NZBC/A1 7.0, D1.2.1, D1.3.2, D1.3.3 (h) (i), G1.3.4, G8.2, G12.3.8; G1/AS1 Table 4

contamination .............................................................................. C/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1; Figure 1

floor waste .............................................................................. E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2
Parapets ........................................... E2/AS1 6.2, Figure 9
General ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 6.3
limitations ................................................................. E2/AS1 6.6
metal cappings ................................................................. E2/AS1 6.4, Figures 9 and 10
parapet-to-wall junctions .................................................. E2/AS1 6.4.1, Figures 11 and 12

Pedestrians
see Access Routes

Penetrations........................................... C/AS1 3.12.3 e), 6.12.4, 6.12.9 d), 6.16.4 e), 6.17.1, 6.17.4,
6.17.5, 6.17.7, 6.18.6 c), 6.18.9, 6.20.13 a)

People with disabilities .......... NZBC/F8.3.4; C/AS1 2.4, 3.15.1 e), 3.17.1 e); D1/AS1 1.1.4,
Table 9; E3/AS1 3.3.2; F7/AS1 2.1.2 d) f); F8/AS1 5.0;
G1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, Figures 5 to 9,
Tables 1 and 2; G2/AS1 1.2.2, Figure 2, G3/AS1 1.5.2;
G5/AS1 3.0; G9/AS1 2.0; G12/AS1 8.0
accessible route identification ........................................... F8/AS1 5.0.1 a) b)
ablessible routes ................................................... G1/AS1 4.1.1
electrical installations ............................................................... NZBC/G9.3.4
enhanced listening systems ..................................................... NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6
facility identification ....................................................... F8/AS1 5.0.1 b)
food preparation and cooking facilities .................................. NZBC/F8.3.5
information and warning signs ............................................. NZBC/F8.2 (d), F8.3.4
listening system identification ............................................. F8/AS1 5.0.3, Figure 7
mechanical installations for access
see Mechanical Installations for Access
personal hygiene facilities ................................................ NZBC/G1.3.5
provision of laundering facilities ........................................ NZBC/G2.3.4
usable water taps ................................................................. G12/AS1 Figure 18
water supply ................................................................. NZBC/G12.3.9

Pergolas
see Decks and Pergolas

Personal Hygiene .................................................. G1; NZBC/G13.1 (a)
see also Sanitary fixtures
absence of facilities ..................................................... NZBC/G1.1 (b)
access to facilities ................................................... NZBC/D1.3.3 e), G1.3.5
location of facilities .................................................... NZBC/G1.3.4
non-water-borne disposal system .......................................... NZBC/G1.3.2 (h)
overflows from sanitary fixtures ........................................ NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4
people with disabilities ........................................ NZBC/G1.3.5; G1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2
privacy ................................................................. G1/AS1 6.0
cubicles ........................................................................ G1/AS1 6.2, Figure 11
line of sight ..................................................................... G1/AS1 6.1, Figure 10
lobbies ............................................................................ G1/AS1 6.3
unisex facilities .............................................................. G1/AS1 1.1.5
privies ........................................................................... G1/AS1 5.0.2
water-borne disposal system ........................................... NZBC/G1.3.2 (g), G13.1 (b)

Piles
see Foundations
Piped Services

- extreme temperatures .................................................. NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
- gas pipes ........................................................................ NZBC/G10.3.2, G10.3
- hazardous substances ................................................. NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
- identification of piping systems .................................. NZBC/G10.3.4
- isolating devices ......................................................... NZBC/G10.3.6
- piping systems .......................................................... NZBC/G10.1
- preventing sound transmission .................................... G6/AS1 1.0.1 c)
- protection against corrosion ...................................... NZBC/G10.3.3

Pipes

- see also Discharge pipes, Discharge stacks, Vent pipes
- installation ................................................................. G11/AS1 4.0
- jointing methods ....................................................... G13/AS1 6.1.1
- materials ......................................................................... G13/AS1 2.1.1, Table 1
- sizing ........................................................................... G11/AS1 1.0
- pressure ranges ........................................................ G11/AS1 1.1
- flow velocities .......................................................... G11/AS1 1.4
- pressures above 1.5 kPa .......................................... G11/AS1 1.3
- pressures below 1.5 kPa ........................................... G11/AS1 1.2
- supports ......................................................................... G13/AS1 6.2.1, Table 7
- thermal movement ................................................... G13/AS1 6.3
- watertightness ........................................................ G13/AS1 7.0

Placement of detectors .................................................. F7/AS1 1.4

Places of assembly .......................................................... D1/AS1 8.0

see also Communal non-residential

Plumbing systems

- see Foul Water

Plywood sheet .............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8
- corners ................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.4
- external ................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.4.1, Figure 122
- Internal ................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.4.2, Figure 123
- finishes .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.9
- flashing material .............................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.5, Tables 20-22
- installation ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.3, Table 23
- fixings .................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.3.1, Table 24
- joints .................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.3.2, Figures 119 and 121
- limitations ............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.1
- materials ................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.2, Figure 119
- parapets and enclosed balustrades .................................. E2/AS1 9.8.7
- soffit details ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.8.6, Figure 8A
- windows and doors .......................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.8
- direct fixed .......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.8.8.1, Figure 115
- with cavity ............................................................................ E2/AS1 9.8.8.2, Figure 116

Pools

- see Swimming pools

Potable water supply

- see Water Supplies
Pressed metal tiles................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3
barges................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
fascias .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
fixings ................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.7, Figure 33
flashings .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.8, Table 7, Figures 34-37
gutters ................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
installation ........................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.1
limitations .......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.1
metal substrate ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4
aluminium ......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4.3
choice of metal .................................................................... E2/AS1 8.3.4.1
steel .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.4.2, Table 20
ridges ................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
roof penetrations ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.10, Figure 29
roof pitch ............................................................................ E2/AS1 8.3.5, Figure 32
tiles and accessories ............................................................ E2/AS1 8.3.3
underlay ............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.3.6, Table 23
Pressure limiting valves ....................................................... G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 c), Figure 8, Table 6
Pressure reducing valves ..................................................... G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 b), Figures 7 and 9, Table 6
Pressure regulators ............................................................. G11/AS1 2.1
Pressure relief valves .......................................................... G12/AS1 6.4.1, 6.6, Table 6
installation ........................................................................... G12/AS1 6.6.5
relief valve drains ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13
Pressurisation of safe paths
see Fire safety precautions

Principal entrance ................................................................ D1/AS1 1.1

Prisons
see Communal residential

Privacy
see Personal Hygiene

Privies
see Personal Hygiene, privies

Profiled metal roof claddings .................................................. E2/AS1 8.4
allowance for expansion ...................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.10, Table 16, Figure 39
fixings: corrugated and trapezoidal profiles ......................... E2/AS1 8.4.8, Figure 39,
Tables 11, 12, 14, 15
requirements ........................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.8.1
fixings: trough profile ........................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.9, Figure 40, Tables 13, 20, 21
flashing details ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.12, Figures 43-48
flashing requirements ........................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.11, Tables 21 and 22, Figures 41 and 42
fixing flashings .................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.11.1, Table 21, Figure 6
general ................................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.2
hidden gutters ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
internal gutters ................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
limitations .......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.1
materials ............................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.3
aluminium ......................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.3.3
choice of metal .................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.3.1, Table 20
steel .................................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.3.2, Table 20
parallel hidden gutters ......................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
profile closure ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.15
profiles .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.4, Figure 38
roof penetrations ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.17, Table 17, Figures 21 and 53-55
roof pitch ............................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.5
stopends ............................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.13, Figure 49
structure ............................................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.6, Tables 11-15
turn-downs at gutters ........................................................ E2/AS1 8.4.14
underlay ............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.4.7, Table 23
valley gutters ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figure 51
Profiled metal wall claddings ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6
(horizontal and vertical)
fixings .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.6, Table 20, Figure 39
flashings ............................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.7, Figures 5 and 6, Table 21
general .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.2
horizontal profiled metal on cavity ...................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9
barges .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.9.4, Figure 97
bottom of cladding ............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.9.5, Figure 98
cavity battens ..................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.2, Table 23
corners .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.9.3, Figure 96
installation .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.1, Table 23
parapets and balustrades .................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.8, Figures 101 and 102
penetrations .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.9.6, Figures 53 and 69
windows and doors ............................................................................ E2/AS1 9.6.9.7, Figures 99 and 100
limitations ........................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.1, Figure 38, Table 3
maintenance ........................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.6.4
materials ............................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.3
choice of metal .................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.3.1, Table 20
steel ...................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.3.2, Table 20
profiles – direct fixed .......................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.5, Figure 38
vertical profile ..................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.8
barges .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.8.2, Figure 92
bottom of cladding ............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.8.3, Figure 93
corners .................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.6.8.4, Figures 93 and 94
installation .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.8.1, Table 23
penetrations .......................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.6.8.5, Figures 53 and 69
windows and doors ............................................................................ E2/AS1 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100

Protected paths
see Escape routes

Protected shafts .................................................................................... C/AS1 6.10.4 a), 6.12.4, 6.16, Figure 6.8

Protecting other property
see Spread of Fire, Internal Moisture, Water Supplies

Protection of gas supply ........................................................................ G11/AS1 7.0
contamination ........................................................................................ G11/AS1 7.1
low pressures ....................................................................................... G11/AS1 7.2

Protection of water supplies ................................................................. G12/AS1 3.4
air gaps .................................................................................................. G12/AS1 3.5
backflow prevention devices .............................................................. G12/AS1 3.6
atmospheric vacuum breakers ............................................................ G12/AS1 3.6.2 d) 3.6.4 d), 3.7.1, Table 2
double check valves ........................................................................... G12/AS1 3.6.2 b), 3.7.2, Table 2
pressure vacuum breakers .................................................................. G12/AS1 3.6.2 c), 3.6.4 c), 3.7.1, Table 2
reduced pressure zone devices ........................................................... G12/AS1 3.6.2 a), 3.6.4 a), 3.7.2, Table 2
cross connections .............................................................................. G12/AS1 3.1, 3.2
hazard .................................................................................................. G12/AS1 3.3
installation ............................................................................................ G12/AS1 3.6.3, 3.6.4, 3.7.1
testing .................................................................................................. G12/AS1 3.7

Purpose groups .................................................................................. C/AS1 1.3.2
Step 3, 2.1.3, 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 3.4.2 d), 4.2.7 a) c), 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.8, 4.5.13, 5.8.4, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.6, 7.11.3, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 4.1, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5
active purpose groups ........................................................................ C/AS1 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.4.1 Step 2, Table 4.1
concessions for multiple purpose groups ........................................... C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.11
fire hazard category 4 ........................................................................... C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11
primary purpose group ...................................................................... C/AS1 2.2.2, 2.2.4, 2.2.7, 4.2.7 c), 4.4.1 Step 1, 4.5.5, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, 6.11.2
residential community care ............................................................... C/AS1 2.4
sleeping purpose groups .................................................................... C/AS1 3.9.12 f), 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5, 4.4.1 Step 2, 4.5.11, 5.3.2 a), 5.7.9, 6.1.2 b), 7.7.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.16, 7.10.5 c), A1.2.1 Type 16, Tables 4.1 and 7.4
Purpose groups (continued)

CL ............ C/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.16.1, 3.16.3, 3.16.7, 3.17.1 c), 3.17.9 a), 6.3, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.18 d), 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; FT/AS1 1.3.5 b)

CM......... C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.17.1 c), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; FT/AS1 1.3.5 b)

CO ................ C/AS1 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 3.16.5 to 3.16.7, 4.3.3, 6.5, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3

CS ........... C/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 2.2.7, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.3.1, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; f7/AS1 1.3.5 b)

IA.......... C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.10.2, 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 4.3.3, 6.10, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3

ID ................ C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.10.2, 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 4.3.3, 6.10, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3

IE ............ C/AS1 4.3.3, 6.9, 6.20.20, 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3

SA ................ C/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 2.2.7, 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.7, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; FT/AS1 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 d)

SC ................ C/AS1 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.7, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; FT/AS1 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 d)

SD ................ C/AS1 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.7, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; FT/AS1 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 d)

SR ........................ C/AS1 1.3.3, 1.3.4, 2.2.8, 2.2.9 b), 3.5.2 b) to 3.5.4 b), 3.15.1, 3.20.1, 4.3.3, 5.9.4 c), 6.8, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.19, 7.10.6, 7.10.8, 7.11.4, Figure 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

SR ........................ C/AS1 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 e), 2.2.3

WF ........................ C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.16.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

WH ........................ C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

WL .......... C/AS1 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.22.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

WM ............ C/AS1 3.5.2 a) to 3.5.8 a), 3.5.8 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 6.11.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
Radioactive substances
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 7

Ramps ........................................... C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.9.2, D1/AS1 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 3.0
accessible ramps ....................................................... D1/AS1 3.1.3, 6.0.3 to 6.0.4, Figure 9
slopes ................................................................. D1/AS1 Table 3
width ........................................................................ D1/AS1 3.2
intermediate landings .............................................. D1/AS1 3.3.1, Table 5
length ....................................................................... D1/AS1 3.3.3
width ........................................................................ D1/AS1 3.3.3
kerb ramps ............................................................... D1/AS1 3.4, Figure 10
landings ................................................................. D1/AS1 3.3, Figure 25
service ramps ......................................................... D1/AS1 3.1.2, Figure 8, Table 4
slip resistance ......................................................... D1/AS1 3.1.4, Table 2
slopes ........................................................................ D1/AS1 3.1, 3.1.1

Reflectances .......................................................... G7/AS1 Table 2
high ........................................................................ G7/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1
medium ...................................................................... G7/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1

Refuge areas
see Fire safety precautions

Refuse
see Solid waste

Reinforcing steel ................................................. B1/AS1 2.1, 3.1, B1/AS3 1.3.2 b), c), 1.4,
1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.8.5, 2.2.1 a), Table 1

Relevant boundaries ........................................... C/AS1 2.2.8, 5.3.2 a), 5.4.1 g), 5.7.6 a), 5.9.4 c), 7.1.2 d),
7.3.1 b), 7.3.4 to 7.3.6, 7.3.9, 7.3.12 b), 7.3.15 a),
7.4.2, 7.5 to 7.8, 7.10.5, 7.10.6, 7.11.4, Figures 7.3,
7.7 to 7.9, Tables 7.1 to 7.5

Relief valve drains
see Cold water expansion valves, Temperature relief valves,
Temperature/pressure relief valves

Retaining walls ........................................................ F4/AS1 1.2.5

Retirement villages
see Communal residential

Rodding points
see Maintenance access to drains

Roof claddings ....................................................... E2/AS1 8.0
general ...................................................................... E2/AS1 8.1
fixings ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.4, Tables 20-22
gutters ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.6, Figure 20
hidden gutters ....................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, Figures 27, 37, 50, 51
internal gutters ....................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, Figures 52 and 63
valley gutters ....................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, Table 8, Figures 27, 37, 50 and 51
limitations ........................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.2
maintenance .......................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.3
projecting eaves .................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.3.1
Roof claddings (continued)

roof penetrations ................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.7, Tables 9 and 17, Figures 21 and 22, 29-31
underlays .............................................................................. E2/AS1 8.1.5, Table 23, Figure 25(b)
underlay support ...................................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.5.1
weathertightness ..................................................................... E2/AS1 8.1.1

Roof/wall junctions ................................................................. E2/AS1 5.0
apron flashings ................................................................. E2/AS1 5.1, Table 7, Figures 7, 8B and 35
barges .................................................................................. E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
fascias ................................................................................ E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
gutters ............................................................................... E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
soffits ................................................................................. E2/AS1 5.3, Figures 8A and 114

car parking and storage ...................................................... C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17
eaves and projections (fire safety) ........................................ C/AS1 2.2.8, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5
exterior surface finishes ...................................................... C/AS1 7.11.1
fire spread ........................................................................... C/AS1 7.1.1, 7.9.1, 7.9.2
fire venting .......................................................................... C/AS1 4.2.4, 5.4.1 i), 5.5.3, 6.3.2 b), 7.8.10 a)
open sided buildings .............................................................. C/AS1 7.8.8, 7.8.9, 7.8.10, Figure 7.10
roof spaces ........................................................................... C/AS1 6.12.6, 6.18.5 b) c), 6.18.7, 6.18.8, 6.18.10

Rubbish chutes
see Solid Waste

Run-off

estimation of run-off ............................................................. E1/VM1 2.0
Rational Method ...................................................................... E1/VM1 2.0.1
rainfall intensity ................................................................. E1/VM1 2.2, E1/AS1 Appendix A
run-off coefficient ............................................................... E1/VM1 2.1, Table 1
slope correction ..................................................................... E1/VM1 2.1.3, Table 2
time of concentration ............................................................ E1/VM1 2.2.1, 2.3
alternative procedure .............................................................. E1/VM1 2.3.6, 2.3.7
catchment slopes ................................................................. E1/VM1 2.3.7
open channel flow ............................................................... E1/VM1 2.3.5
pipe flow ............................................................................. E1/VM1 2.3.4, Table 1
time of entry ........................................................................ E1/VM1 2.3.2
overland flow ....................................................................... E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 1
road channel flow ............................................................... E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 2
time of network flow ............................................................. E1/VM1 2.3.3
Index

S

S rating see Fire resistance ratings

Safe paths ................................................. F7/AS1 1.3.1, 1.3.4; F8/AS1 3.2.3 b) see also Escape routes

Safe place ............................................. NZBC/F7.3, F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1 3.1.1, 3.7.1, 3.16.4, 3.16.8, 6.1.1, 6.22.7, A2.1.1 Type 13 and Type 16

Safe trays see Storage water heaters

Safe water temperatures see Water Supplies, hot

Safety from Falling ........................................... F4

see also Barriers
accidental falls ........................................... NZBC/F4.2
children .................................................... NZBC/F4.3.4 (f), F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1-4
gates ........................................................ NZBC/F4.3.5 (a)
impact of people ......................................... NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)
low risk areas ........................................... F4/AS1 1.2.2
pressure of people .................................... NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)
opening windows ..................................... F4/AS1 2.0
provision of barriers ............................... NZBC/F4.3.1
retaining walls ........................................ F4/AS1 1.2.5
roofs with permanent access ................ NZBC/F4.3.2
seats on decks ........................................ F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figure 6
swimming pools ....................................... NZBC/F4.3.3, F4.3.5
fencing .................................................... F4/AS1 2.7

Safety of users see Hazardous Agents on Site, Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes, Safety from Falling, Construction and Demolition Hazards, Lighting for Emergency, Warning Systems, Signs

Sanitary appliances ................................... NZBC/G13.2; G12/AS1 8.0.1, Table 1; G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

washing machines ................................. G13/AS1 Figure 2, Table 2

Sanitary fixtures ................................ NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4, G1.3.1, G1.3.2, G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b), G13.2; G12/AS1 6.12.1, 6.14.2, Figure 20, Tables 1 and 3; G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

see also Basins, Bidets, Personal Hygiene, Showers, Urinals, WC pans

acceptable standards .............................. G1/AS1 2.6

access pans ................................................ G1/AS1 4.2.7
people with disabilities ........................ G1/AS1 1.2.2, 4.1
basins ......................................................... G1/AS1 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1
bidets ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.4

communal sanitary fixtures .................. G1/AS1 3.4

collection and installation ....................... G1/AS1 2.0

locations ..................................................... G1/AS1 3.0, 4.2.1

non-flushing sanitary fixtures ................ G1/AS1 5.0

privies ......................................................... G1/AS1 5.0.2

number of fixtures required .................. G1/AS1 1.0, Figure 1, Tables 1 to 4


sanitary towel disposal ......................... G1/AS1 1.1.5 b), 1.2, 1.2.2

showers .................................................. G1/AS1 2.5, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2

soil fixtures ............................................. G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1

see also WC pans

space dimensions ................................. G1/AS1 3.1, 4.2.2, 6.2.1, Figures 4 to 9
toilets ..................................................... G1/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

D E P A R T M E N T  O F  B U I L D I N G  A N D  H O U S I N G

3 0  S e p t e m b e r  2 0 1 0

1 9 3
Sanitary fixtures (continued)

urinals ................................................................................ G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1
bowl urinals ........................................................................ G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
continuous wall urinals ......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3
discharge system ................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.2
flushing systems ................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
manually operated................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.8
stall urinals ........................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5
surface finishes ..................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.4
trough urinals ...................................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

Sanitation
see Personal Hygiene

Schools
see Communal non-residential

SDI
see Smoke developed index

Seating .......... C/AS1 2.3.5, 3.3.2 k), 3.3.6 c), 3.9.3, 3.9.4, 3.9.7 to 3.9.11, 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Tables 2.2 and 3.4
open air auditoriums (purpose group CO) ......................... C/AS1 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1

Seats on decks................................................................. F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figure 6

Security .......................................................... NZBC/G14.3.2 (g); G14/VM1 1.9, G14/AS1 1.1
Seismic resistance of engineering systems.......................... B1/VM1 13.0

Serviceability limit states
see Structure, limit states

Services and facilities
see Personal Hygiene, Laundering, Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, Ventilation, Interior Environment, Airborne and Impact Sound, Natural Light, Artificial Light, Electricity, Piped Services, Gas as an Energy Source, Water Supply, Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste

Sewers
see Foul Water

SFI
see Spread of flame index

Sheds
see Outbuildings

Shops
see Commercial buildings

Showers .................. E3/AS1 3.2, 3.2.2, 3.3, Figures 4 and 5; G1/AS1 2.5, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2, G13/AS1 Table 2

Shrinkage
see Structure, loads

Signs............................................................... F8; NZBC/C2.3.3, D1.3.4 (a), D2.3.2 (d);
                                                      C/AS1 3.3.6 a), 3.17.11 d), D1/AS1 1.1.1
                                                      NZBC/F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a)
                                                      exit ................................................................................. F8/AS1 3.0
                                                      alternative exit ......................................................... F8/AS1 3.2.3 b)
                                                      arrows ................................................................. F8/AS1 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
                                                      backgrounds ......................................................... F8/AS1 3.3.3
                                                      colours ............................................................... F8/AS1 2.1.3.4, 3.5.3 a) b), 4.1.3, Table 3
                                                      illumination ............................................................. F8/AS1 3.5
                                                      externally illuminated ............................................. F8/AS1 3.5.2
                                                      internally illuminated ......................................... F8/AS1 3.5.3
                                                      lighting supply .................................................... F8/AS1 3.5.5
                                                      self-luminous ....................................................... F8/AS1 3.5.4
                                                      lettering .............................................................. F8/AS1 3.3.1), Table 4
                                                      location ................................................................. F8/AS1 3.1
                                                      no exit signs ......................................................... F8/AS1 3.2.3 a)
                                                      wording ................................................................. F8/AS1 3.2
Index

Signs; escape routes (continued)

fire safety .......................................................... F8/AS1 4.0, 6.4
call points .......................................................... F8/AS1 4.1, Figure 4
colours ............................................................... F8/AS1 4.1.3
fire and smoke control doors ................................ F8/AS1 4.2
lifts ................................................................. F8/AS1 6.4.1
stairs for Fire Service personnel ......................... F8/AS1 6.4.3, Figures 12 and 13
storage heights .................................................. F8/AS1 6.4.2, Figure 11
hazard signs ...................................................... F8/AS1 6.0
dangerous goods ................................................ F8/AS1 6.1
class 1 ................................................................ F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 2 .............................................................. F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 3 .............................................................. F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 4 .............................................................. F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 5 .............................................................. F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 7 .............................................................. F8/AS1 6.1.4
colour ............................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4 a
radiation warning symbol .................................. F8/AS1 6.1.4 a, Figure 8
colour ............................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.3
layout .............................................................. F8/AS1 6.1.3
lettering ........................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.3
location ........................................................... F8/AS1 6.1.4
electrical hazards .............................................. F8/AS1 6.2, Figure 9
escalators and moving walks .................. F8/AS1 6.6, Figure 15
floor loadings ................................................... F8/AS1 6.3
buildings ........................................................ F8/AS1 6.3.1, Figure 10
lifts ................................................................. F8/AS1 6.3.2
passenger lifts .................................................. F8/AS1 6.3.2 a
service lifts ..................................................... F8/AS1 6.3.2 b
hazardous substances and processes ................. NZBC/F8.3.1
identification of hazards ................................... NZBC/F8.2 (c), F8.3.2
machine rooms ................................................ F8/AS1 6.5, Figure 14
non-potable water ............................................ F8/AS1 6.7, Figure 16
lighting for emergency ...................................... NZBC/F6.3.2, F8.3.3 (b)
people with disabilities ..................................... NZBC/F8.2 (d), F8.3.4, F8/AS1 6.5
access symbol .................................................. F8/AS1 5.0.2 c), Figure 6
layout .............................................................. F8/AS1 5.0.2, Figure 5
listening systems .............................................. F8/AS1 5.0.3, Figure 7
readability ........................................................ NZBC/F8.3.1
lettering type and proportions ......................... F8/AS1 1.0, Table 1
safety ............................................................ F8/AS1 2.0, 3.2.1
cautions ........................................................ F8/AS1 2.2.2, 6.1.2, 6.2.2, Figure 2
colours ........................................................... F8/AS1 2.1, Table 3
layout .............................................................. F8/AS1 2.2
prohibition and stop signs ................................ F8/AS1 2.2.1, 6.7.1, Figure 1
safe condition signs ........................................ F8/AS1 2.2.3
safety symbols ................................................ F8/AS1 2.3
visibility ......................................................... NZBC/F8.3.1, F8.3.3 (b)

Single escape routes
see Escape routes

Sinks .................................................. E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3; G3/AS1 1.1.5, G13/AS1 Table 2
see also Basins, Cleaners' sinks, Kitchen sinks

Site characteristics ........................................... B1/VM4 Appendix A

Site investigation ............ B1/VM4 3.5.1, 4.7.1, Appendix A; F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
analysis ......................................................... F1/VM1 2.4
assessment ..................................................... F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.5, Figure 2
detailed investigation ......................... B1/VM4 A1.3; F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.3
history and records ................................. F1/VM1 2.1
preliminary investigation ......................... B1/VM4 A1.2; F1/VM1 1.0.2 b), 2.2
previous industrial use of site .............. F1/VM1 2.1.1, Table 1
recording information ................................. B1/VM4 A1.4

Site specific considerations ................................ B2/VM1 1.2
Siteworks
  see Design, siteworks

Slip resistance.............................................. D1/VM1 1.0, D1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.4, 4.1.4 c), Table 2

Slopes ................................................................................................................................. D1/AS1 1.2
  acceptable slopes ................................................................. D1/AS1 1.2.1, Figure 2
  changes in level .............................................................................. D1/AS1 1.3, 1.3.1
  cross falls .................................................................................. D1/AS1 1.2.2

Slope stability ..................................................................................................................... B1/VM4 1.0.4

Small chimneys
  see Chimneys

Smoke ............................................................... NZBC/C3.3.1, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, C3.3.7, C3.3.8

Smoke alarms ................................................................. F7/AS1 3.1.1, 3.1.2
  alarm system ................................................................................. F7/AS1 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4
  location ......................................................................................... F7/AS1 3.3.1, 3.3.2
  maintenance .................................................................................. F7/AS1 3.4.1

Smoke control .................................................................................................................... C/AS1 3.11.9, 6.19.1, 6.19.12, 6.19.13, Table 6.1
  see also Fire safety precautions
  car parking ......................................................................................... C/AS1 6.10.4 b), 6.10.6
  doors 
    see Doors in air handling systems
    see Fire safety precautions
  intermediate floors ......................................................... C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 4.5.18, 6.21.3, 6.21.4
  limited area atriums ................................................................. C/AS1 4.5.18, 6.21.4 b), 6.22.1, 6.22.7, 6.22.8, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
  long corridors .............................................................................. C/AS1 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
  mechanical smoke extract
    see Fire safety precautions
  natural smoke venting
    see Fire safety precautions
  pressurisation
    see Fire safety precautions
  smoke reservoirs ........................................................................... C/AS1 6.22.2, 6.22.5, 6.22.7 to 6.22.10, A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
  systems ......................................................................................... C/AS1 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 4.5.18, 6.21.5, 6.23.3 a), A2.1.1 Type 9, Type 10 Type 11 Type 17, B1.1.1, B2.2.1 Step 2, B3.1.1, B3.3.1
  ventilation ......................................................................................... C/AS1 3.14.7, 6.9.6 to 6.9.8, 6.10.6
  vertical safe paths ........................................................................... C/AS1 6.9.11, Figure 6.1

Smokecells .............................................................. C/AS1 3.4.6 b), 4.2.2, 6.1.2 a), 6.4.1, 6.9.1, 6.12.4

Smoke detectors
  see Fire safety precautions

Smoke developed index (SDI) ................................................ C/AS1 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d), C4.1.1 d), Table 6.2

Smoke separations ...................................................... C/AS1 3.8.3 b), 3.11.1, 3.17.12 b), 6.1.2 c), 6.3.1, 6.6.4 b), 6.6.6 b), 6.9.6 e), 6.9.11, 6.10.1, 6.12.3, 6.12.4, 6.12.9, 6.13.1, 6.19.1, Table 6.1
  glazing .............................................................................................................. C/AS1 5.8.9
  smoke seals ............................................................................................. C/AS1 6.12.9, 6.19.2 b), 6.19.4

Smoke spread 
  see Smoke control

Snow 
  see Structure, loads
Socket outlets
see Electricity, people with disabilities

Soil fixtures
G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
see also WC pans

Soil properties
B1/VM4 1.0.5, 2.0.6, 2.0.7, Appendix A

Soil shrinkage and expansion
B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3, A1.2.1

Soils
G1/AS1 1.0.2

Solar water heaters
G12
installation
G12/AS2 5.0
pipe installation
G12/AS2 5.3
pipe insulation
G12/AS2 5.4
weathertightness
G12/AS2 5.2, Table 4, Figures 2–9
wetback water heaters
G12/AS2 5.1
location
G12/AS2 4.0, 4.1
solar orientation and inclination
G12/AS2 4.2, Figure 2
maintenance and durability
G12/AS2 7.0
durability
G12/AS2 7.2
maintenance
G12/AS2 7.1
materials
G12/AS2 2.0
material selection
G12/AS2 2.1, Tables 1, 2 and 3
requirements
G12/AS2 3.0
operating and safety devices
G12/AS2 3.4
protection from frosts
G12/AS2 3.6, Figure 1
protection from Legionella bacteria
G12/AS2 3.5
sizing of systems
G12/AS2 3.3
solar controller
G12/AS2 3.2
solar water heaters and components
G12/AS2 3.1.1
scope
G12/AS2 1.0
exclusions
G12/AS2 1.2
structural support limitations
G12/AS2 1.1
structural support
G12/AS2 6.0
collector support rails
G12/AS2 6.5, Figures 17 and 18
elevated solar collectors parallel to the roof
G12/AS2 6.4, Figures 14–16
general requirements
mounting collectors at different pitch to roof cladding
G12/AS2 6.6, Figures 19 and 20

Solid fuel appliances
B1/AS3 2.0
installation
C/AS1 9.1
seismic restraint
C/AS1 9.1.2

Solid plastering
B2/AS1 3.3

Solid Waste
C/AS1 3.12.1, 6.16.5, 6.16.6
NGBC/G15.2, G15.3.1
holding
NGBC/G15.2, G15.3.1
sewer
NGBC/G15.3.3
storage
C/AS1 3.12.1, G15/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.3, 3.0, Figure 1
alternative solution
G15/AS1 3.1
capacity
G15/AS1 1.0.1
location
G15/AS1 2.0.1
floors
G15/AS1 3.0.2
walls
G15/AS1 3.0.3
water supply
G15/AS1 3.0.7
windows
G15/AS1 3.0.4, 3.0.6
space required
G15/AS1 1.0.2
vehicle access
G15/AS1 3.0.10
ventilation
G15/AS1 1.0.3, 3.0.8, 3.0.9
temperature
NZBC/G15.3.1 (d)
waste disposal units
NZBC/G15.3.3
waste (rubbish) chutes ........................................  
NZBC/G15.3.2; G15/AS1 4.0, Figure 2

cleaning .......................................................... G15/AS1 4.0.3

donks .............................................................. NZBC/G15.3.2 (d)

restricted access ...................................... NZBC/G15.3.2 (g)

spread of fire ............................................... NZBC/G15.3.2 (e)

Sound insulation tests
see Airborne and Impact Sound

Sound transmission class (STC)
see Airborne and Impact Sound

Spandrels .................................................. C/AS1 7.12 e), 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2

Specified intended life
see Durability

Spread of Fire
automatic fire suppression systems ........................ NZBC/C3.3.6
see also Fire safety precautions

automatic smoke control systems ........................ NZBC/C3.3.8
see also Smoke control

concealed spaces ................................................ NZBC/C3.3.4

protect adjacent property ................................ NZBC/C3.1 (c), C.3.2 (c)

resistant to spread of fire .................................... NZBC/C2.3.3, C3.3.1

rubbish chutes .............................................. NZBC/G15.3.2

safeguard the environment ...................... NZBC/C3.1 (d), C3.2 (d)

safety while evacuating ................................. NZBC/C3.1 (a)
see also Means of Escape

Spread of flame index (SFI) ...................... C/AS1 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d), C4.1.1 b), Table 6.2

Sprinklers
see Fire safety precautions

Stability
see Fire resistance ratings, Structure

Stadiums
see Communal non-residential

Staircase
see Stairways

Stairs
see Stairways

Stairs and ladders ....................................... C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.4.1 a), 3.4.7, 3.9.14, 3.15.9, Figures 3.6, 3.10 and 3.21
curved and spiral stairs ...................................... C/AS1 3.3.5, 3.4.7 a) b)


stairways ................................................. C/AS1 3.3.3, 3.3.4, 3.3.6 b), 3.4.5, 3.11.8, 3.12.3, 3.15.6, 5.8.2 c), 6.9.3, 6.9.10, 7.5.7

Stairways .................................................. NZBC/D1.3.2 (f) to (i), D1.3.4 (g) (h); D1/AS1 4.0
see also Access Routes, accessible routes and ladders

accessible stairs ....................................... D1/AS1 4.1.7, 4.1.8 b), 4.2.1, 6.0.1 to 6.0.4, Figure 11, Tables 8 to 8

common stairs ......................................... D1/AS1 4.1.8, 4.2.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8

curved stairs ........................................ D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4, Figure 17

landings ................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.1, 4.3.6 c), 4.6.2 c), Figures 14 and 25
direction changes ........................................ D1/AS1 4.3.4, 4.3.6 c)

length ......................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.4, 4.3.6 c)

maximum rise ........................................ D1/AS1 4.3.2, Table 7

obstructions ............................................... D1/AS1 4.3.5, Figure 15

width .......................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.3

lighting ..................................................... D1/AS1 4.6, 4.6.2, Table 8

pitch ........................................................ D1/AS1 4.1, Figure 11, Table 6

pitch lines ................................................ D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, 4.5.2
private stairs ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.6.2, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8
main ............................................................... D1/AS1 Figure 11, Table 6
minor ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
risers ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.1, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.1.8, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, Figures 11 and 12, Table 6
secondary ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
service stairs ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8
slip resistance ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.1.4 c), Table 2
spiral stairs ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.1.3, 4.4.1
treads ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.1, 4.1.2 to 4.1.7, 4.5.1, 4.6, Figures 11 to 13, Table 6
tapered treads ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.4, Figure 17
visibility ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.3.6, 4.6, Table 8, G8/AS1 1.0.3
width ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.4.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 6.0.1
winders ............................................................... D1/AS1 4.5, Figure 18

Standard test
see Test methods
Steel
see Design, steel
Storage water heaters ......................... NZBC/H1.3.4; G12/AS1 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6.3, 6.6.5, 6.7.2, 6.6.4, 6.8 to 6.11, Table 5; H1/AS1 5.0
see also Water heaters
drain pipes ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.11.3 c)
onopen vented............................................................... G12/AS1 6.3.2, Figures 6 and 7
free outlet type ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.1.2, 6.4.2
mains pressure supply ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.2.1, Figure 8, Table 5
tank supply ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.1.1, Figure 6, Table 5
safe trays ............................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.3, 6.11.3
seismic restraint ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.11.5, Figure 4
unvented ............................................................... D1/AS1 6.3 to 6.7, Figure 8
valve vented ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.3 to 6.7, Figure 8
Storage water tanks
see Tanks
Strainers (filters) ............................................................... G12/AS1 6.2.3
Structural fire endurance rating (S)
see Fire resistance ratings
Structural integrity
see Structure, Structural Stability During Fire
Structural Stability During Fire
consequential collapse ............................................................... NZBC/C4.3.3
fire hazards ............................................................... NZBC/C4.3.1
fire intensity ............................................................... NZBC/C4.3.1
fire load ............................................................... NZBC/C4.3.1
fire resistance ............................................................... NZBC/C4.3.1, C4.3.2, C4.3.3
Structural stability
see Fire resistance ratings
Structure
building instability ............................................................... NZBC/B1.1
collapse ............................................................... NZBC/B1.2
damage ............................................................... NZBC/B1.2
deflections ............................................................... NZBC/B1.2
demolition ............................................................... NZBC/B1.3.6
design
cement ............................................................... B1/VM1 3.0
drains
see Drains
foundations
see Foundations
loadings ............................................................... B1/VM1 2.0
earthquake ............................................................... B1/AS3 1.9, Table 2
limit state ............................................................... B1/VM1 2.2.4, 7.1
Structure (continued)

masonry.............................................................. B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.3.3

siteworks............................................................. B1/VM1 10.0

steel............................................................................. B1/VM1 5.0

strength reduction factor........................................ B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4

timber ............................................................................ B1/VM1 6.0, B1/AS1 3.0

see also Timber barriers

windows

see Windows

failure........................................................................... NZBC/B1.1

limit states

serviceability limit state .............................................. NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5

ultimate limit state ...................................................... NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.5

loads ............................................................................ NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.3

creep ............................................................................. NZBC/B1.3.3

cyclic loads ............................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3

differential movement .............................................. NZBC/B1.3.3

dynamic loads .......................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3

earth pressure ........................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3

earthquake ..................................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3

seismic resistance of building services ...................... B1/VM1 14.0

explosion ...................................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3

liquid ............................................................................. NZBC/B1.3.3

shrinkage ...................................................................... NZBC/B1.3.3

snow .............................................................................. NZBC/B1.3.3

wind .............................................................................. NZBC/B1.3.3

sitework ........................................................................ NZBC/B1.3.6, B1.3.7

stability ........................................................................ G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4

seismic restraint ......................................................... G14/VM1 2.3.2

temporary support .................................................... NZBC/B1.3.5

vibrations ....................................................................... NZBC/B1.2

Stucco ........................................................................ B1/AS1 5.0, E2/AS1 9.3

bottom of stucco ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.8, Figure 75

Amend 12 Oct 2011

finishes ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.3.7

installation ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.4

general........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.3.4.1

movement control joints .......................................... E2/AS1 9.3.4.2

limitations ..................................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.1, Figure 74

non-rigid plaster backings ........................................... E2/AS1 9.3.5

installation of wall underlays ..................................... E2/AS1 9.3.5.1, Table 23

rigid plaster backings ................................................ E2/AS1 9.3.6

fibre cement sheet backing ........................................ E2/AS1 9.3.6.2

plywood backing ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.6.1

parapets and enclosed balustrades ............................. E2/AS1 9.3.9

structure ....................................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.2

stucco cladding system .............................................. E2/AS1 9.3.3, Tables 23 and 24, Figure 74

windows and doors .................................................... E2/AS1 9.3.10, Figure 76

Subsidence ............................................................... B1/VM4 A1.2.1 (a)

Suites

see Firecells

Surface finishes ....................................................... C/AS1 6.1.2 e), 6.20, Tables 6.2 and 6.3

ceilings ......................................................................... C/AS1 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a)

exceptions ..................................................................... C/AS1 6.20.4

exterior surfaces ....................................................... C/AS1 7.1.2 c), 7.8.6, 7.11

flooring and floor coverings ................................. C/AS1 6.20.8 to 6.20.10, 6.20.14, C2.1

wharenui ................................................................. C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 2.2
Surface Water .................................................................................................................. E1

see also Run-off, drains

2% probability storm

(50 year return period) ................................................................................ NZBC/E1.3.1

10% probability storm

(10 year return period) ................................................................................ NZBC/E1.3.2

drainage systems ................................................................................ NZBC/E1.3.3

Suspended flexible fabrics……………… C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.16 to 6.20.19, C3.1, Table 6.2

Swimming pools

see Safety from Falling

T

Tanks

industrial liquid waste ................................................................. G14/VM1 1.4.1 b), 1.4.2, 3.0

seismic restraint ........................................................................ G14/VM1 3.2.1

water tanks ................................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2, 6.2.1

access ......................................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.5, Figure 4

covers ......................................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.4

location ......................................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.1

overflow pipes ............................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2.2, Figure 4

safe trays ..................................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.3, Figure 4

seismic restraint ........................................................................ G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4

structural support .......................................................................... G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4

water storage tanks ....................................................................... G12/AS1 5.1

Taverns

see Communal non-residential

Temperature

see Electricity, Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment, Outbreak of Fire, Piped Services, Solid Waste, Structure, load, Water Supplies

Temperature control

see Interior Environment, interior temperature

Temperature/pressure relief valves,................................. G12/AS1 6.4.1, Figure 8, Table 6

installation .................................................................................... G12/AS1 6.6.5

relief valve drains ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13

Test methods ............................................................................. C/AS1 Appendix C

fire properties of external wall cladding systems......................... C/AS1 C8.1

fire resistance........................................................................ C/AS1 C6.1

fire resisting closures .................................................................. C/AS1 C7.1

flame barriers ........................................................................ C/AS1 C9.1

flammability of floor coverings .................................................... C/AS1 C2.1

flammability of membrane structures .......................................... C/AS1 C3.1

flammability of suspended flexible fabrics................................. C/AS1 C3.1

non-combustibility of materials .................................................. C/AS1 C5.1

properties of lining materials .................................................... C/AS1 C4.1

Theatres ....................................................................................... NZBC/G5.3.5

see also Communal non-residential

Thermal break ........................................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)

Thermal resistance (R-value) ...................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.4, H1/VM1 1.4, H1/AS1 2.1.1, 2.2, 2.3

alternative solution .................................................................... E3/AS1 1.1.5

materials and installation ................................................. E3/AS1 1.1.3

Thermostats ................................................................................ G12/AS1 6.3.1, 6.5.1

Thresholds ................................................................................... D1/AS1 1.3.2

Timber .......................................................................................... B2/AS1 3.2

see also Design, timber, Timber weatherboards
Timber barriers........................................................................................................... B1/AS2 1.0
see also Barriers and Safety from Falling

Timber weatherboards............................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4
finishes ............................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.9
horizontal weatherboards ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1.3, 9.4.4
external corners.................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.4, Figures 77 and 78
fixings ........................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.3, Table 24
horizontal laps..................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.1
internal corners.................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.4.5, Figure 79
joints ............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.4.2
installation ............................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4.3, Table 23
fixings ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4.3.1, Tables 20 and 24
limitations ................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1
horizontal weatherboards ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.1.3, Table 3
vertical weatherboards .............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.1.2, Table 3
weatherboard profiles ........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4.1.1
materials ................................................................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.2, Table 23
parapets and enclosed balustrades ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.4.8
vertical weatherboards .............................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.1.2, 9.4.5
corners (external and internal) ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.5.3, Table 7, Figures 79 and 80
fixings ........................................................................................................ E2/AS1 9.4.5.2, Table 24
laps .............................................................................................................. E2/AS1 9.4.5.1
windows and doors in cavity walls ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.4.7, Figures 17C, 85 and 86
windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards .............................. E2/AS1 9.4.6,
Figures 17D, 81-84

Time-share accommodation
see Communal residential

Toilets
see Personal Hygiene, WC Pans

Toxic substances
see Hazardous Substances and Processes, Class 6

Transport terminals
see Commercial buildings

Travel distance ................................................................................ NZBC/C2.3.1 (d), C2.3.2, C3.3.1 (a)

Tunnels
see Ancillary buildings

Turnstiles
see Doors
U

Ultimate limit states
  see Structure, limit states

Universities
  see Communal non-residential

Unprotected areas .............................. C/AS1 3.14.3, 3.14.6, 5.1.1 b), 7.1.2 d), 7.3, 7.4.1 a), 7.4.2, 7.5.2 to 7.5.6, 7.5.8, 7.6.4, 7.7.1, 7.7.3, 7.7.5, Step 2 and Step 3, 7.8.9, 7.8.10 cl, 7.9.10, 7.9.11, 7.9.13, Figures 7.3 to 7.5, Tables 7.2 to 7.4
  fire resisting glazing (Type B) .................................................. C/AS1 5.8.2 a), 7.4.1 a), 7.4.2 to 7.4.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
  small openings (Type A) ............................................. C/AS1 7.4.1 a), 7.4.2, 7.4.4, Figure 7.4

uPVC pipe ............................................................................................................. G13/AS3 1.0

Urinals .................................. E3/AS1 3.3, 3.3.6; G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1; G13/AS1 Table 2
  bowl urinals ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
  continuous wall urinals .................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3
  discharge system ............................................................. G1/AS1 2.3.2
  flushing systems ............................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
  manually operated .......................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.8
  stall urinals ............................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5
  surface finishes ............................................................ G1/AS1 2.3.4
  trough urinals ............................................................... G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

Utensil washing ................................................................. G3/AS1 1.1.1
Vacuum relief valves ................................................................. G12/AS1 Table 6
Vehicles ................................................................. NZBC/D1.1, D1.2.2, D1.3.1 (d) (e), D1.3.5, G14.3.2 (b);
   D1/AS1 10.0, G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5; G15/AS1 3.0.10
   access ................................................................. G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5
   car parking areas ................................................................. D1/AS1 10.1
   accessible car parking spaces ................................................. D1/AS1 10.1, 10.2.1
   commercial vehicles ................................................................. D1/AS1 11.0.2
   loading spaces ................................................................. D1/AS1 11.0.2
Vent pipes ............................................... G12/AS1 6.3.2, 6.8; G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 12, Table 5;
   G13/AS2 Figures 5 and 6
diameter ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.8.2, G13/AS1 Table 6
fixture vent pipes ................................................................. G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11, Tables 5 and 6
gradient ................................................................. G13/AS1 5.4
height .................................................................... G12/AS1 6.8.2 d)
installation ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.9.1; G13/AS1 5.5 to 5.7, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11
insulation ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.8.3
relief vent pipes ................................................................. G13/AS1 5.6; Figure 7
terminal ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.8.2 c); G13/AS1 5.7.3, Figure 12
Ventilation ...................................................... G4; NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); C/AS1 6.9.6, E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2;
   air control flow ................................................................. NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0, G4/AS1 1.5.1 b
   air handling systems ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.3.1 b
   air purity ................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/VM1 2.0
   bacteria, pathogens and allergens ........................................ NZBC/G4.3.2
   balconies, bridges and open stairways ........................................ C/AS1 3.14.7
   car park ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.4
   combined natural and mechanical ........................................ G4/AS1 1.4
   contaminated air ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.1 f)
   discharge systems ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.1 f)
   disposal ................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.4
   removal ................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.3
   cross-ventilation for car parking ........................................... C/AS1 6.10.4, 6.10.6
   drains ................................................................. G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
   extract ventilation ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.1 c
   fixed combustion appliances ........................................ NZBC/G4.3.5
   flues ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4
   gas burning appliances ................................................................. C/AS1 9.2.2
   gas-fuel appliances ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.0
   another solution ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.0
   draught diverters ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.3.2
   flue construction ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.3
   flue location on dwellings ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.4
   mechanical ventilation ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.2
   natural ventilation ................................................................. G4/AS1 2.1
   maximum occupancy ................................................................. NZBC/G4.2
   mechanical ventilation systems ........................................ NZBC/C3.3.7, G4.3.2; G4/AS1 1.5, 2.2
   natural ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2.1
   household units and accommodation units with one external wall .................................. G4/AS1 1.3
   natural smoke ventilation ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.3
   see Fire safety precautions
   number of air changes ................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.1
   oil fired appliances ................................................................. C/AS1 9.3.2
   outdoor air supply ................................................................. NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/AS1 1.5.1 a) d)
   passive stack ventilators ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.3.7
   positive and negative pressure ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.5
   prevention of internal moisture ................................................................. NZBC/E3.3.1
   rate ................................................................. G4/VM1 1.0.1
   recirculated air systems ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.5.1 e)
   safe paths ................................................................. C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
   solid fuel appliances ................................................................. C/AS1 9.1.2
   trickle ventilators ................................................................. G4/AS1 1.3.9
   ventilation rate ................................................................. G4/VM1 1.0
Vermin-proofing ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.8.3

Vibrations

see Structure

Visibility in Escape Routes .................................................. F6/AS1
duration ................................................................. F6/AS1 1.6
documentation ............................................................ F6/AS1 1.7
equipment ................................................................. F6/AS1 1.8
illuminance ................................................................. E2/AS1 1.3
installation ................................................................. F6/AS1 1.8
location ................................................................. F6/AS1 1.2
maintenance .............................................................. F6/AS1 1.8
method of measurement ................................................ F6/AS1 1.4
modifications to AS 2293.1: 2005 and AS 2293.3: 2005................ F6/AS1 Appendix B
modifications to NZS 6104............................................... F6/AS1 Appendix C
light output ............................................................... F6/AS1 1.5
scope ................................................................. F6/AS1 1.1
start-up ................................................................. F6/AS1 1.5

Walls......................... NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), C3.3.1, C3.3.5, E2.3.2, E2.3.3, E3.3.4, E3.3.5, G6.3.1;
C/AS1 5.3.1, 5.7.2, 6.10.6, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.16.2, 6.18.5 c), 6.20.3,
6.20.4 d) f), 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a), 7.8.9,
7.9.5, 7.9.18, Table 6.2.
cavities and concealed spaces ........................................... C/AS1 6.18.4, Figures 6.11 and 6.12
curtain walls ................................................................. C/AS1 6.18.4, 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
external walls ............................................................ NZBC/E2.3.2

see also Unprotected areas
floor/wall junctions ...................................................... G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 5
internal/external wall junctions ........................................... G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 4
surface finishes .......................................................... NZBC/C3.3.1
theatre proscenium walls................. C/AS1 6.3.1, 6.3.2 f), 6.19.9, 6.19.10, 6.19.11, Figure 6.13
wall assemblies ...................................................... G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 2

Wall/Roof junctions

see Roof/wall junctions

Wall claddings ............................................................... E2/AS1 3.3, 9.0
air seals........................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.6, Figure 81
barriers to airflow ........................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.4, Table 23
bottom of cladding ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.3, Tables 7 and 18, Figure 65
cementitious materials .................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.3, Table 18
concrete ground slabs (except masonry veneer) .............. E2/AS1 9.1.3.3, Table 18
concrete slabs ............................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.3.4, Tables 18 and 23, Figure 65
core requirements ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.4
inter-storey junctions ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.2, Table 23, Figures 66 and 67
inter-storey cavities ...................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.3, Figure 66
requirements of cavity walls ........................................ E2/AS1 9.1.8.5
vermin-proofing ....................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.6
wall framing behind cavities ........................................ E2/AS1 9.1.8.7
genera ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.8.8
limitations .................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.8.9
maintenance ................................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.8.10
penetrations ............................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.9
inter-storey junctions ..................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.9.4, Figure 70
other cavity penetrations ............................................... E2/AS1 9.1.9.2
penetrations through cavities ........................................ E2/AS1 9.1.9.1
pipes and service penetrations ....................................... E2/AS1 9.1.9.3, Figures 68 and 69
wall underlay .......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.7, Tables 3 and 23
wall underlays to wall openings .................................... E2/AS1 9.1.5, Figures 72A and 72B

Amend 12
Oct 2011
Wall claddings (continued)
windows and doors.......................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10
attachments ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.10.8
closed cell foam tape ................................................... E2/AS1 9.10.7
head flashings ......................................................... E2/AS1 9.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71
scope ........................................................................... E2/AS1 9.10.1
treatment of opening.................................................. E2/AS1 9.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B, 116, Tables 7 and 20
window and door heads ............................................. E2/AS1 9.10.3, Figure 71
window and door jambs .............................................. E2/AS1 9.10.6
window sills.............................................................. E2/AS1 9.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D

Warehouses
see Industrial buildings

Warning Systems ............................................................ F7
see also Alarm systems .................................................. NZBC/F7.3

Wash-down areas ......................................................... G3/AS1 2.3

Washing machines
see Sanitary appliances

Waste chutes
see Solid Waste

Waste disposal units .................................................... NZBC/G15.3.3; G13/AS1 Figure 2, Table 2

Waste pipes
see Discharge pipes, Pipes

Water
see External Moisture, Foul Water, Internal Moisture, Surface Water,
Water Supplies

Water heaters ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.1, Table 5
installation ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.11
instantaneous water heaters ......................................... G12/AS1 6.11
solar water heaters ..................................................... G12/AS1 6.11, 6.15, Table 5
storage water heaters
see Storage water heaters
wet back water heaters ................................................ G12/AS1 6.13, Figure 15

Water main ................................................................... G12/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1

Water seals ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2; G13/AS1 1.0.3, 3.2.1, Figure 1, Table 1,
G13/AS2 3.3.1 d)

Water splash .................................................................. E3/AS1 3.0
basins ......................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
baths ........................................................................... E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
lining materials ........................................................... E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
joints in linings ........................................................... E3/AS1 3.2, Figure 2
showers ........................................................................ E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
sinks ............................................................................ E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
tubs .............................................................................. E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3
urinals ........................................................................... E3/AS1 3.3.6

Water Supplies ................................................................. G12
access for maintenance .............................................. NZBC/G12.3.6 (d)
backflow prevention devices ...................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)
cold ............................................................................. G3/AS1 1.1.4
drinking water ............................................................. NZBC/G12.2
energy efficiency ......................................................... NZBC/H1.2, H1.3.4
hot ................................................................................ G3/AS1 1.1.4, Figure 1; G12/AS1 6.0
mixing devices
tempering valves ........................................................ G12/AS1 6.14.2, Figure 16
pipe sizes ................................................................. G12/AS1 6.12, Table 4
safe water temperatures ............................................. G12/AS1 6.14
isolation of system ..................................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)
leakage ...................................................................... NZBC/G12.3.6 (c)
launderies .................................................................... G2/AS1 1.1.1, 1.1.2
mains ........................................................................... G12/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1
non-potable water ................................................................. NZBC/G12.3.2; G12/AS1 4.1
outlet identification .............................................................. G12/AS1 4.2.1, Figure 3
people with disabilities ....................................................... NZBC/G12.3.9
potable water ........................................................................ G12/AS1 3.0; G14/VM1 1.6.3
pressure vessels ...................................................................... G12/AS1 (b), G12.3.7 (a)
sanitary appliances .............................................................. NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
sanitary fixtures ...................................................................... NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.4 G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
solid waste areas ................................................................... G15/AS1 3.0.7, 4.0.3
water storage vessels ........................................................... NZBC/G12.3.7, G12.3.8
see also Storage water heaters
water temperature ...... NZBC/G12.1 (b) (c), G12.3.3 to G12.3.5, G12.3.7 (b), G12.3.8

Water supply systems ................................................................. G12/VM1 1.0, G12/AS1 5.0
installation ................................................................................. G12/AS1 5.2
anchor points .......................................................................... G12/AS1 7.1.2
electrochemical compatibility .................................................. G12/AS1 7.1.1
in concrete or masonry .......................................................... G12/AS1 7.3.3
pipe supports .......................................................................... G12/AS1 7.1
spacing .................................................................................. G12/AS1 7.1.3, Table 7
pipes below ground ................................................................. G12/AS1 7.3.2
protection from damage ........................................................ G12/AS1 7.5
protection from freezing ........................................................ G12/AS1 7.2
protection from frosts ............................................................. G12/AS1 3.6.3
maintenance facilities ............................................................ G12/AS1 5.2
materials ................................................................................ G12/AS1 2.0, Table 1
pressure limitations ............................................................... G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
temperature limitations ........................................................ G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
pipe size ................................................................................ G12/AS1 5.3, Table 4
flow rates ................................................................................. G12/AS1 5.3.1, Table 3
watertightness ........................................................................ G12/AS1 7.5

Water tanks
see Tanks

Water traps ................................................................................. G13/AS1 3.0, Figure 1
dimensions .............................................................................. G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figure 1
location ................................................................................... G13/AS1 3.3
multiple outlets ...................................................................... G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2

WC pans ................................................................. G1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.1, 4.2.2, Figures 4 to 6, Table 1;
G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figures 1 and 6, Tables 2 and 5,
cisterns .................................................................................. G1/AS1 2.2.2
cubicles .................................................................................. G1/AS1 6.2, Figure 11
flushing system ...................................................................... G1/AS1 2.1.1 f), 2.2, 4.2.6
surface finish .......................................................................... G1/AS1 2.1.1 a)
water seals ............................................................................. G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2

Water stops ................................................................................ D1/AS1 1.3.2

Weatherboards
see Timber weatherboards and fibre cement weatherboards

Weathertightness ................................................................. E2/AS1 2.1, 8.1.1

Weathertightness risk factors .................................................... E2/AS1 3.0
establishing the risk .............................................................. E2/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
building envelope risk scores ............................................. Table 2
examples ........................................................................ E2/AS1 3.4, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.3, Tables 4-6, Figures 2-4
definitions of risk ............................................................... E2/AS1 3.1.1, Table 1
risk score .............................................................................. E2/AS1 3.1.2, Table 2

wall claddings ........................................................................ E2/AS1 3.3, Table 3

Where Runanga
see Communal non-residential, assembly service
Wheelchairs ................................................................. D1/AS1 7.0.1
see also People with disabilities, Accessible routes
spaces for wheelchairs ........................................... D1/AS1 8.1, 8.1.2, Figure 30
wheelchair access ....................................................... NZBC/D1.3.4 (b) (d) (e)

Wind
see Structure, loads

Windows and doors .... B1/VM1 12.0; C/AS1 3.1.4, 6.20.4 c), E2/AS1 9.1.10, 9.2.10, 9.3.10,
9.5.4, 9.6.8.6, 9.6.9.7, 9.7.6, 9.8.8, 9.9.9; E3/AS1 1.3.1;
G7/AS1 1.0.1 to 1.0.3, 2.0.1, Figures 1 and 2; G15/AS1 3.0.4, 3.0.6

see also Natural Light
closed cell foam tape ................................................ E2/AS1 9.1.10.7
fire windows
see Glazing
glazing ................................................................. B1/AS1 7.0
head flashings ...................................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71

scope ................................................................. E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
treatment of opening ......................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B and 116, Tables 7 and 20
used for escape .............................................. C/AS1 3.3.6 d), 3.18, 6.20.6 b), Figure 3.32
vertical profile: windows and doors ............... E2/AS1 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
window and door heads .................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
windows and doors in cavity walls .............. E2/AS1 9.4.7, 9.5.4.2, 9.8.8.2, 9.9.9,
Figures 85, 86, 91, 116 and 128
windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards ..... E2/AS1 9.4.4, 9.5.4.1, 9.8.8.1,
9.9.9, Figures 81-84, 90, 115 and 127
window and door jambs ..................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.6, Table 7
window and door sills ....................................... E2/AS1 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D

Work camps ............................................................. NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d);
G2/AS1 Table 1, G3/AS1 1.0.1

see also Communal residential, community service